



ICAO

Doc 8896

Manual of Aeronautical  
Meteorological Practice

Thirteenth Edition, 2021



Approved by and published under the authority of the Secretary General

INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION





| ICAO

Doc 8896

# Manual of Aeronautical Meteorological Practice

Thirteenth Edition, 2021

Approved by and published under the authority of the Secretary General

INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION

Published in separate English, Arabic, Chinese, French, Russian  
and Spanish editions by the  
INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION  
999 Robert-Bourassa Boulevard, Montréal, Quebec, Canada H3C 5H7

For ordering information and for a complete listing of sales agents  
and booksellers, please go to the ICAO website at [www.icao.int](http://www.icao.int)

Eleventh edition 2017  
Twelfth edition 2019  
Thirteenth edition 2021

**Doc 8896, *Manual of Aeronautical Meteorological Practice***  
Order Number: 8896  
ISBN 978-92-9265-389-7 (print version)

© ICAO 2021

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a  
retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, without prior  
permission in writing from the International Civil Aviation Organization.

## AMENDMENTS

Amendments are announced in the supplements to the *Products and Services Catalogue*; the Catalogue and its supplements are available on the ICAO website at [www.icao.int](http://www.icao.int). The space below is provided to keep a record of such amendments.

### RECORD OF AMENDMENTS AND CORRIGENDA

AMENDMENTS		
No.	Date	Entered by

CORRIGENDA		
No.	Date	Entered by



## FOREWORD

The first edition of the *Manual of Aeronautical Meteorological Practice*, published in response to recommendations made by the Meteorology and Operations Divisional Meeting<sup>1</sup> (Paris, 1964), was intended as a guide for use by pilots and other aeronautical personnel on meteorological procedures, codes, symbols and abbreviations. It also contained a multilingual list of terms and phrases commonly used in meteorological briefings.

A second edition was prepared in 1977 to reflect, in particular, the many changes in procedures and terminology recommended by the Eighth Air Navigation Conference and the Meteorology Divisional Meeting<sup>2</sup> (1974).

As demand for the manual continued to grow and because further important changes to meteorological procedures had taken place, particularly in connection with the recommendations for the establishment of a world area forecast system (WAFS) made by the Communications/Meteorology Divisional Meeting<sup>3</sup> (Montréal, 1982), a third edition was prepared. That edition was rewritten aiming to meet the needs of operational aeronautical meteorologists, particularly those at the working level, as well as the needs of pilots and other aeronautical personnel.

As a consequence of an extensive amendment proposal to Annex 3 — *Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation* developed by the Communications/Meteorology/Operations (COM/MET/OPS) Divisional Meeting<sup>4</sup> (1990) including, in particular, provisions regarding the transition to the final phase of the WAFS, aerodrome observations, reports and forecasts, SIGMET information, etc., a fourth edition of the manual was published.

The fifth edition was the direct result of Amendment 70 to Annex 3, applicable from 1 January 1996, which constituted a comprehensive update of the provisions, in particular, those related to air-reporting and the observation and reporting of wind shear. In addition, new provisions concerning information on weather phenomena hazardous to low-level flights (AIRMET and GAMET messages) were introduced.

The sixth edition reflected the substantial changes made to Annex 3 in Amendments 71 and 72.

The seventh edition took account of the substantial changes which were introduced in Annex 3 by Amendment 73, which was developed by the Meteorological Divisional Meeting (2002)<sup>5</sup> and became applicable in November 2004. In view of the fact that all of the technical specifications and templates had been regrouped in Part II of Annex 3 by subject matter, it was no longer considered necessary to reproduce these templates in this manual. Furthermore, material related to coordination between aeronautical meteorological services and air traffic services, search and rescue and aeronautical information services units was eliminated since these issues were extensively covered in the *Manual on Coordination between Air Traffic Services, Aeronautical Information Services and Aeronautical Meteorological Services* (Doc 9377).

The eighth edition incorporated all the changes included in Amendment 74 to Annex 3. Furthermore, explanations of the terms “MET authority”, “MET inspectorate”, “MET regulator” and “MET service provider” were introduced, guidance related to issuance of SIGMET was expanded and the chapter related to meteorological service for operators and flight crew members was re-organized and clarified.

---

1. Held conjointly with the Third Session of the Commission for Aeronautical Meteorology (CAeM) of the World Meteorological Organization (WMO).

2. Held, in part, conjointly with the Extraordinary Session (1974) of the body mentioned in Note 1.

3. Held conjointly with the Seventh Session of the body mentioned in Note 1.

4. Held conjointly with the Ninth Session of the body mentioned in Note 1.

5. Held conjointly with the Twelfth Session of the body mentioned in Note 1.

The ninth edition reflected the substantial changes made to Annex 3 by Amendment 75 (2010).

The tenth edition incorporated changes resulting from Amendment 76 (2013) including clarification of the terminology used for meteorological offices.

The eleventh edition incorporated changes resulting from Amendment 77 to Annex 3, which was developed by the Meteorological Divisional Meeting (2014)<sup>6</sup> and became applicable in November 2016. It introduces digital format for volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisories and AIRMET information, and the provision of METAR/SPECI, TAF and SIGMET information in digital format.

The twelfth edition introduced space weather centres and the requirement to disseminate OPMET information using ICAO meteorological information exchange model (IWXXM)<sup>7</sup> geography markup language (GML) form, introduced in Amendment 78 to Annex 3.

Amendment 1 to the twelfth edition introduced updates in order to distinguish OPMET information in IWXXM GML form from that using alphanumeric codes. It contains revisions on the exact pressure levels of the upper wind and upper-air temperature forecasts prepared by the world area forecast centres (WAFCs). It also updates the guidelines for aerodrome meteorological offices regarding the provision of feedback on WAFS forecasts.

The thirteen edition incorporates changes resulting from Amendments 79 and 80 to Annex 3, developed by the Meteorology Panel. It contains guidance related to improved harmonization of SIGMET information, to tropical cyclone advisory and related SIGMET information (including a new Appendix K), and to the provision of OPMET information in the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (IWXXM) geography markup language (GML) form.

The body of the manual is based primarily on Annex 3, summarized and enlarged upon where necessary. The appendices provide information on other subjects such as location of instruments at aerodromes and use of meteorological information by operators and flight crew members.

It should be stressed that the material in this manual is intended for guidance only. It is not intended to replace relevant national instructions or explanatory material, nor is it intended to cover the many non-aeronautical uses of meteorological information. Nothing in this manual should be taken as contradicting or conflicting with Annex 3 provisions or any other Standards, Recommended Practices, procedures or guidance material published by ICAO or WMO. It should also be noted that in this manual the words “shall” and “should” are not used in a regulatory sense as in ICAO or WMO regulatory documents.

Comments concerning this manual should be addressed to:

The Secretary General  
International Civil Aviation Organization  
999 Robert-Bourassa Boulevard  
Montréal, Quebec, Canada H3C 5H7

---

6. Held jointly with the Fifteenth Session of the body mentioned in Note 1.

7. A data model for representing aeronautical meteorological information.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
<b>Chapter 1. Meteorological service for international air navigation .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
1.1 General.....	1-1
1.2 Aerodrome meteorological offices and other meteorological offices .....	1-3
1.3 Meteorological watch offices (MWOs).....	1-3
1.4 Aeronautical meteorological stations .....	1-4
1.5 World area forecast centres (WAFCs).....	1-5
1.6 Tropical cyclone advisory centres (TCACs).....	1-5
1.7 Volcanic ash advisory centres (VAACs) .....	1-5
1.8 State volcano observatories .....	1-6
1.9 Space weather centres (SWXCs).....	1-6
<b>Chapter 2. Meteorological observations and reports .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
2.1 General.....	2-1
2.2 Aerodrome observations and reports .....	2-1
2.3 Routine reports .....	2-4
2.4 Special reports .....	2-23
2.5 Reports of volcanic activity .....	2-26
2.6 Basic meteorological data .....	2-26
<b>Chapter 3. Forecasts .....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
3.1 General.....	3-1
3.2 Accuracy of aeronautical meteorological forecasts .....	3-1
3.3 Types of aeronautical meteorological forecasts .....	3-1
3.4 Aerodrome forecasts (TAF).....	3-3
3.5 Trend forecasts .....	3-10
3.6 Forecasts for take-off.....	3-14
3.7 Forecasts of en-route conditions .....	3-14
<b>Chapter 4. SIGMET information, tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisory information, AIRMET information, aerodrome warnings, wind shear warnings and alerts, and space weather advisory information .....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
4.1 General.....	4-1
4.2 SIGMET information.....	4-1
4.3 Tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisory information .....	4-6
4.4 AIRMET information .....	4-9
4.5 Aerodrome warnings .....	4-12
4.6 Wind shear warnings and alerts .....	4-13
4.7 Space weather advisory information.....	4-14

<b>Chapter 5. Meteorological service for operators and flight crew members .....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
5.1 General.....	5-1
5.2 Briefing, consultation and display .....	5-4
5.3 Flight documentation .....	5-5
5.4 Automated pre-flight information systems .....	5-8
5.5 Information for aircraft in flight.....	5-9
<b>Chapter 6. Dissemination of OPMET information.....</b>	<b>6-1</b>
6.1 General.....	6-1
6.2 Dissemination of OPMET information on the AFTN and AMHS .....	6-2
6.3 Dissemination of OPMET information on the Internet .....	6-5
6.4 Interrogation procedures for international OPMET databanks.....	6-5
6.5 Dissemination of OPMET information to aircraft in flight .....	6-6
<b>Chapter 7. Aircraft observations and reports .....</b>	<b>7-1</b>
7.1 General.....	7-1
7.2 Reporting of aircraft observations during flight .....	7-1
7.3 Routine aircraft observations.....	7-1
7.4 Special and other non-routine aircraft observations .....	7-2
7.5 Content of air-reports.....	7-4
7.6 Criteria for reporting meteorological and related parameters in automated air-reports .....	7-7
7.7 Exchange of air-reports .....	7-7
7.8 Recording and post-flight reporting of aircraft observations of volcanic activity.....	7-8
7.9 Detailed instructions concerning the content of special air-reports received by voice communications by MWOs.....	7-8
<b>Chapter 8. Aeronautical climatological information.....</b>	<b>8-1</b>
<b>Chapter 9. Relevant documents .....</b>	<b>9-1</b>
9.1 ICAO documents of a specifically meteorological nature.....	9-1
9.2 Other ICAO documents .....	9-3
9.3 WMO documents.....	9-5
<b>Appendix A. Information on the World Area Forecast System (WAFS).....</b>	<b>App A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B. Location of instruments at aerodromes .....</b>	<b>App B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C. Reporting of prevailing visibility using fully automatic observing systems .....</b>	<b>App C-1</b>
<b>Appendix D. Criteria for trend forecasts .....</b>	<b>App D-1</b>
<b>Appendix E. Notifying WAFCs of significant discrepancies.....</b>	<b>App E-1</b>
<b>Attachment to Appendix E. Form to be used for the notification of a significant discrepancy     on significant weather forecasts.....</b>	<b>Att-App E-1</b>

---

<b>Appendix F. Use of OPMET information for pre-flight planning by operators and flight crew members .....</b>	<b>App F-1</b>
<b>Appendix G. Commonly used abbreviations in meteorological messages.....</b>	<b>App G-1</b>
<b>Appendix H. Display of meteorological information in the cockpit .....</b>	<b>App H-1</b>
<b>Appendix I. Guidelines for access to aeronautical meteorological information.....</b>	<b>App I-1</b>
<b>Appendix J. Template for routine air-reports by air-ground data link .....</b>	<b>App J-1</b>
<b>Appendix K. Guidance related to the issuance of SIGMET information for tropical cyclones .....</b>	<b>App K-1</b>

---



# Chapter 1

## METEOROLOGICAL SERVICE FOR INTERNATIONAL AIR NAVIGATION

### 1.1 GENERAL

*Introductory Note.— All the detailed specifications, including examples, concerning OPMET information are related to alphanumeric codes, unless indicated otherwise. Some general, overall guidance related to OPMET information in IWXXM GML form is nevertheless included in this manual; however, for detailed guidance on the implementation of IWXXM, the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (Doc 10003) should be used.*

1.1.1 Meteorological service for international air navigation is provided by meteorological authorities designated by States. Details of the meteorological service to be provided for international aviation are determined by each State in accordance with the provisions of Annex 3 and with regional agreements which apply to specific areas designated as air navigation regions by ICAO. Each State also establishes a suitable number of meteorological offices and stations, i.e. aerodrome meteorological offices, meteorological watch offices (MWOs) and aeronautical meteorological stations. Aerodrome meteorological offices and aeronautical meteorological stations provide information required for operational planning, flight operations, the protection of aeronautical equipment on the ground, and for various other aeronautical uses. The information provided includes observations and reports of actual weather conditions at aerodromes and forecasts; it is made available at aerodrome meteorological offices and is disseminated as appropriate to aeronautical users, including operators, flight crew members, air traffic services (ATS) units, search and rescue services units, airport management and others concerned with the conduct or development of international air navigation.

1.1.2 Forecasts of en-route conditions, except forecasts for low-level flights issued by aerodrome meteorological offices, are prepared by world area forecast centres (WAFCs) (see 1.5). This ensures the provision of high-quality and uniform forecasts for flight planning and flight operations. It also permits MWOs to concentrate on keeping watch on weather conditions in their flight information regions (FIRs) and permits aerodrome meteorological offices to concentrate on local aerodrome forecasting, to keep watch over local (aerodrome) conditions and to issue warnings of weather conditions that could adversely affect operations and facilities at the aerodrome (e.g. aerodrome and wind shear warnings).

1.1.3 SIGMET and AIRMET information concerning the occurrence of specified en-route weather and other phenomena in the atmosphere which may affect the safety of aircraft operations is issued by MWOs (see 1.3). In the specific cases of tropical cyclones and volcanic ash, in addition to SIGMET, advisory information is issued by designated tropical cyclone advisory centres (TCACs) and volcanic ash advisory centres (VAACs) (see 1.6 and 1.7). Furthermore, advisory information is provided on space weather phenomena by designated space weather centres (see 1.9).

1.1.4 The responsibility for the provision of meteorological service to international air navigation mentioned in 1.1.1 rests with the meteorological authority designated by each State in accordance with Annex 3, 2.1.4. The meteorological authority ("MET authority") may wish to provide the service or may arrange for the provision of the service by other providers on its behalf.

1.1.5 Terms additional to MET authority are being defined in the framework of the State Safety Oversight System. In particular, use of the terms "MET inspectorate", "MET regulator" and "MET service provider" has raised questions. The following list attempts to clarify these terms which are neither specified nor used in Annex 3:

- a) The MET authority refers to an administrative entity or the State relevant authority empowered with the oversight function to ensure that meteorological services comply with the local law and regulations. It has the power to exercise authority through the promulgation and amendment of regulation, as well as supervise and enforce such capabilities;
- b) the “MET inspectorate” refers to the body of inspectors responsible for conducting safety oversight for the “MET authority” over the “MET service provider” in the State concerned;
- c) the “MET regulator” can be considered to be simply another term for the “MET authority”, i.e. the body responsible for the facilities and services to be provided in accordance with Annex 3. This term is used to highlight the regulatory aspects of its functions; and
- d) the “MET service provider” is the entity that is providing the facilities and services to be provided in accordance with Annex 3. In the context of safety oversight audits, the term “entity providing the MET service” is sometimes used to designate the “MET service provider”.

There are no provisions currently in place that would prevent the “MET inspectorate” to be part of the same organization as the “MET authority”. Furthermore, in accordance with Annex 3, the “MET service provider” could be either within the “MET authority” or, alternatively, within an independent organization. However, in some States or regions (e.g. under the European Single Sky), the legislation stipulates that the “MET regulator” (i.e. the “MET authority”) and the “MET service provider” must be separated, at least, functionally. When the “MET service provider” is part of the same organization as the “MET authority”, it is preferable that the oversight function be carried out by an external, independent “MET inspectorate”. In such cases, the “MET inspectorate” could be an independent MET expert involved in the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) certification audit of the “MET service provider”, or part of the ministry overseeing the “MET authority” or the civil aviation authority (CAA), provided that such a CAA-based inspectorate is a third-party, independent body with qualified meteorological personnel. Such arrangements would avoid any conflict of interest between inspection and service provision. Irrespective of the administrative arrangements, it is considered important that the “MET inspectorate” have close coordination with the entity responsible for the more general safety oversight (located in most cases within the CAA).

1.1.6 In order to meet the objectives of meteorological service for international air navigation and provide users with the assurance that the service, including the meteorological information provided, complies with the aeronautical requirements, the meteorological authority must establish and implement a properly organized quality system. It is recommended that such a system be developed in accordance with the ISO 9000 series of quality assurance standards. The system is to be certified by an approved organization.

*Note.— Specific guidance on this subject is contained in the Guide to the Implementation of Quality Management Systems for National Meteorological and Hydrological Services and Other Relevant Service Providers (WMO-No. 1100).*

1.1.7 Properly educated and trained personnel should be employed in the provision of meteorological service to international air navigation. It is, therefore, an important responsibility of the meteorological authority to ensure that widely recognized standards are applied to the qualifications, competencies, education and training of all of the personnel involved in the provision of meteorological service to international air navigation. With respect to meteorological personnel, the requirements of the WMO should be applied.

*Note 1.— The requirements concerning the qualifications, competencies, education and training of meteorological personnel in aeronautical meteorology are given in the Technical Regulations (WMO-No. 49), Volume I — General Meteorological Standards and Recommended Practices, Part V — Qualifications and Competencies of Personnel Involved in the Provision of Meteorological (Weather and Climate) and Hydrological Services, Part VI — Education and Training of Meteorological Personnel and Appendix A — Basic Instruction Packages.*

*Note 2.— Qualifications, competencies, education and training in aeronautical meteorology of aeronautical personnel (e.g. pilots, air traffic control personnel, flight dispatch officers), required by the aeronautical authorities concerned, must comply with the relevant ICAO documents (i.e. Training Manual (Doc 7192), Part F-1 — Meteorology for Air Traffic Controllers and Pilots).*

## **1.2 AERODROME METEOROLOGICAL OFFICES AND OTHER METEOROLOGICAL OFFICES**

1.2.1 Meteorological offices designated to provide meteorological service for aerodromes serving international air navigation are called aerodrome meteorological offices. An aerodrome meteorological office may or may not be located at an aerodrome. An aerodrome meteorological office should be associated with an aerodrome control tower or approach control unit for the provision of meteorological information. The aerodrome meteorological offices issue aerodrome forecasts (as TAF) and trend forecasts in accordance with regional air navigation agreement. In addition to maintaining a continuous survey of meteorological conditions over the aerodrome(s) under their responsibility, preparing forecasts of local meteorological conditions, aerodrome warnings and wind shear warnings, aerodrome meteorological offices also provide briefing, consultation and flight documentation or other meteorological information, and display weather charts, reports, forecasts, meteorological satellite images and information derived from ground-based weather radar or a radar network. Much of the information is obtained from WAFCs or from other meteorological offices (which may be located in a different country). Furthermore, aerodrome meteorological offices supply operational meteorological (OPMET) information to aeronautical users and exchange such information with other aerodrome meteorological offices. This also includes the exchange of OPMET information required by regional air navigation agreement. In addition, where necessary, aerodrome meteorological offices supply information regarding pre-eruption activity, volcanic ash eruptions or the presence of volcanic ash in the atmosphere to their associated ATS units, the aeronautical information services (AIS) units and the MWO concerned, as agreed between the ATS, AIS and meteorological authorities concerned. However, not all international aerodromes have an aerodrome meteorological office, and for such aerodromes the relevant electronic regional air navigation plans (eANPs), Part V of Volume II, Table MET II-2 indicate the name and location of the meteorological office designated to supply OPMET information concerning the aerodrome to operators, ATS units and others concerned.

1.2.2 Owing to local circumstances, it may be convenient for the duties of an aerodrome meteorological office associated with an aerodrome to be shared between two or more aerodrome meteorological offices. In this instance, the division of responsibility should be determined by the meteorological authority in consultation with the appropriate ATS authority.

## **1.3 METEOROLOGICAL WATCH OFFICES (MWOs)**

1.3.1 States having accepted responsibility for providing ATS within an FIR or control area (CTA) have to either designate an MWO to serve that FIR/CTA or arrange for another State to designate an MWO on its behalf (see 1.3.2). An MWO must be associated with an FIR or CTA for the provision of meteorological information. The MWOs designated in accordance with regional air navigation agreement are listed in the relevant eANP, Part V of Volume II, Table MET II-1, to indicate the overall plan for providing meteorological service for the FIR/CTA within each ICAO region. They maintain a continuous watch over meteorological conditions affecting flight operations within their areas of responsibility, issue information on the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified hazardous en-route weather and other phenomena in the atmosphere which may affect the safety of aircraft and low-level aircraft operations (SIGMET and AIRMET information, respectively) and supply this and other weather information to their associated ATS units, usually an area control centre (ACC) or a flight information centre (FIC). In addition, MWOs exchange SIGMET information issued by other MWOs as required by regional agreements. The AIRMET information issued should be transmitted to MWOs in adjacent FIRs and to other MWOs or aerodrome meteorological offices, as agreed between the meteorological authorities concerned. In

addition, in accordance with regional agreements, AIRMET information should be transmitted to international OPMET databanks and to the centres designated by regional agreements for the operation of the aeronautical fixed service (AFS) Internet-based services (see Chapter 4). In preparing SIGMET and AIRMET information, MWOs normally make use of special air-reports, and satellite and radar data.

1.3.2 If a State arranges for another State to designate an MWO on its behalf, such arrangements could be either on a bilateral (i.e. involving two States) or on a multilateral basis (i.e. involving at least three States). Increasing number of States consider consolidating the provision of MET watch services to a limited number of MWOs for two main reasons, i.e. in view of enhancing:

- a) safety (whenever the duties of a deficient MWO, unable to fulfil its obligations, are transferred to a fully operational MWO in another State); and
- b) efficiency (decreasing the number of MWOs unavoidably reduces costs).

1.3.3 However, such arrangements call for close cooperation between the States concerned (e.g. enhanced exchange of relevant MET information) and require that the delegation of the service of an FIR/CTA to an MWO in another State be formally agreed upon and recorded by all the States concerned, and properly reflected in the relevant ANP, Part V of Volume II, Table MET II-1.

1.3.4 MWOs also supply the information received on pre-eruption volcanic activity, volcanic eruptions and volcanic ash clouds, for which SIGMET information has not already been issued, to their associated ACC(s)/FIC(s), and in accordance with regional agreements, to the VAACs concerned. It is also the responsibility of MWOs to supply information received concerning a release of radioactive materials into the atmosphere within the area of their responsibility to their associated ACC(s)/FIC(s) and to the relevant AIS units, as agreed between the ATS, AIS and meteorological authorities concerned. This information is usually obtained from the WMO regional specialized meteorological centre which specializes in the provision of computer-generated dispersion model products for radiological environmental emergency response.

1.3.5 Owing to local circumstances, it may be convenient for the duties of an MWO associated with an FIR/CTA to be shared between two or more MWOs. In this instance, the division of responsibility should be determined by the meteorological authority in consultation with the appropriate ATS authority.

1.3.6 Appreciating that States are required to implement a properly organized quality system comprising procedures, processes and resources necessary to provide for the quality management of meteorological information to be supplied to users, and that States with one or more MWO must ensure that the MWO(s) maintain continuous watch over meteorological conditions affecting flight operations within its(their) area(s) of responsibility, States (through their meteorological authorities) could decide to establish contingency modes of operation to be activated during the temporary interruption to the operation of an MWO. Such contingency modes of operation could include the delegation of some or all of the functions of the primary MWO to another MWO or an aerodrome meteorological office within the State (where such other offices exist) or in another State until such time as the primary MWO returns to normal operation.

## 1.4 AERONAUTICAL METEOROLOGICAL STATIONS

1.4.1 The actual weather observations at aerodromes and offshore structures are made at aeronautical meteorological stations. The specific types of observations and related reports are disseminated either locally, or to other meteorological offices and stations, as required, in accordance with regional air navigation agreement.

1.4.2 In the areas prone to volcanic eruptions, aeronautical meteorological stations and other meteorological stations make observations regarding volcanic activity and volcanic eruptions. These observations form the basis for the issuance of volcanic activity reports. Details on the content and dissemination of such reports are given in 2.5.



## 1.5 WORLD AREA FORECAST CENTRES (WAFCS)

The two WAFCS (eANP, Volume I, Part V) are components of the world area forecast system (WAFS), which is designed to supply aerodrome meteorological offices, meteorological authorities and other users with forecasts of global upper winds, upper-air temperatures, tropopause heights and temperatures, maximum winds, humidity, cumulonimbus clouds, icing, and turbulence in the GRIB code form for direct input into meteorological and/or flight planning computers. In addition, the WAFS supplies global forecasts of significant weather in the BUFR code form and in IWXXM GML form.

*Note 1.— Further information on the WAFS is given in Appendix A.*

*Note 2. — Forecasts of turbulence supplied by WAFCS encompass all types of turbulence, including clear air and in-cloud turbulence.*

*Note 3.— The technical specifications for IWXXM are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.3, Part D — Representation Derived from Data Models. Guidance on the implementation of IWXXM is provided in the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (Doc 10003).*

*Note 4. — Geography markup language (GML) is an encoding standard of the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC).*

## 1.6 TROPICAL CYCLONE ADVISORY CENTRES (TCACs)

TCACs (eANP, Volume I, Part V) are meteorological centres designated by regional agreements based on advice from WMO. Seven TCACs have been designated by ICAO and they maintain a 24-hour watch during the period of operations corresponding to the tropical cyclone season in their area of responsibility. They monitor the development of tropical cyclones in their areas of responsibility using geostationary and polar-orbiting satellite data and other meteorological information sources (e.g. numerical weather prediction models). TCACs provide MWOs, international OPMET databanks established by regional air navigation agreement, the AFS Internet-based services and, as necessary, other TCACs with advisory information regarding the position of the centre of the tropical cyclone, changes in its intensity at the time of observation, its forecast direction and speed of movement, central pressure and maximum surface wind near the centre of the cyclone. The advisory information is to be used by MWOs in support of the issuance of SIGMET information on tropical cyclones. The information is readily available to aeronautical users, e.g. through the AFS Internet-based services.

## 1.7 VOLCANIC ASH ADVISORY CENTRES (VAACs)

1.7.1 VAACs (eANP, Volume I, Part V) are meteorological centres designated by regional agreements based on advice from the WMO. Nine VAACs have been designated by ICAO and they maintain a 24-hour watch. In case of interruption of the operation of a VAAC, its functions are to be carried out by another VAAC or another meteorological centre, as designated by the VAAC provider State concerned. VAACs monitor relevant satellite data and, where available, relevant ground-based and airborne data, to detect volcanic ash in the atmosphere. Subsequently, VAACs run volcanic ash numerical dispersion models to forecast the movement of a volcanic ash cloud. VAACs maintain contact with State volcano agencies in their respective areas of responsibility in order to obtain expert and timely information on significant pre-eruption volcanic activity and volcanic eruptions of concern to international air navigation. As a result, the VAACs provide, as required, MWOs, ACCs, FICs, NOTAM offices, WAFCS, international OPMET databanks established by regional agreements, the AFS Internet-based services and other VAACs with advisory information regarding the lateral and vertical extent and forecast movement of volcanic ash in the atmosphere. The advisory information is to be used by MWOs in support of the issuance of SIGMET information on volcanic ash clouds. The information is readily available to aeronautical users, e.g. through the AFS Internet-based services.

*Note.*— Relevant ground-based and airborne data includes data derived from Doppler weather radar, ceilometers, LIDAR and passive infrared sensors.

1.7.2 VAACs form part of the ICAO International airways volcano watch (IAVW). The international arrangements set up within the IAVW are aimed at monitoring volcanic ash in the atmosphere and providing warnings to aircraft of volcanic ash and associated volcanic activity.

*Note.*— Detailed information on the IAVW can be found in the Manual on Volcanic Ash, Radioactive Material and Toxic Chemical Clouds (Doc 9691) and in the Handbook on the International Airways Volcano Watch (IAVW) — Operational Procedures and Contact List (Doc 9766).

## 1.8 STATE VOLCANO OBSERVATORIES

A number of States that have active volcanoes in their territories maintain a network of volcano observatories to monitor active or potentially active volcanoes within the State concerned. The selected volcano observatories that are required to provide information on significant pre-eruption volcanic activity and volcanic eruptions to the IAVW (see 1.7.2) are designated by regional agreements and listed in the eANP, Volume I, Part V for the ICAO regions concerned.

## 1.9 SPACE WEATHER CENTRES (SWXCs)

1.9.1 SWXCs are designated by ICAO as global and/or regional centres based on advice from the WMO. They maintain a 24-hour watch; in case of SWXC interruption, its functions are to be carried out by another SWXC or another centre, as designated by the SWXC provider State concerned. SWXCs monitor relevant ground-based, airborne, and space-based observations in view of detecting, and predicting when possible, the existence of space weather phenomena in their areas of responsibility. They provide advisory information regarding the extent, severity and duration of space weather phenomena that have an impact in the following areas:

- a) high-frequency (HF) radio communications;
- b) communications via satellite;
- c) GNSS-based navigation and surveillance; and
- d) radiation exposure at flight levels.

1.9.2 SWXCs supply the advisory information to ACCs, FICs and aerodrome meteorological offices, other SWXCs and international OPMET databanks, international NOTAM offices and the AFS Internet-based services. The advisory information is readily available to aeronautical users, e.g. through the AFS Internet-based services.

*Note.*— Guidance on the provision of space weather advisory information, including the ICAO-designated provider(s) of space weather advisory information, is provided in the Manual on Space Weather Information in Support of International Air Navigation (Doc 10100).

## Chapter 2

# METEOROLOGICAL OBSERVATIONS AND REPORTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

2.1.1 Observations of meteorological conditions are made by means of instruments and visual estimation and are used for landing and take-off, en-route navigation and flight performance, and as a basis for forecasting. Those observations used primarily for aircraft operations are called “operational meteorological (OPMET) information” while those used primarily for forecasting purposes are considered to be “basic meteorological data”. OPMET information includes aerodrome reports, landing forecasts, aerodrome forecasts, special aircraft observations, SIGMET and AIRMET information, tropical cyclone, volcanic ash and space weather advisories and WAFS forecasts. Basic meteorological data include synoptic surface and upper-air observations, satellite images, weather radar observations and routine aircraft observations. OPMET information is described in detail below.

*Note.— The total costs related to the provision of OPMET information can be recovered from international civil aviation through air navigation charges, while the costs related to the provision of basic meteorological data are to be allocated between aeronautical and non-aeronautical users. Detailed guidance related to cost allocation is given in the Manual on Air Navigation Services Economics (Doc 9161).*

2.1.2 At many locations, observations are made by use of fully automatic observing equipment. The equipment normally forms part of an integrated automatic system, with displays at local aeronautical meteorological station(s), aerodrome meteorological office(s) and/or other meteorological office(s), briefing facilities and air traffic services (ATS) units. Integrated automatic systems should include backup procedures to ensure the continuity of observations at all times. Semi-automatic observing equipment provides for the manual insertion of meteorological elements which the equipment is not capable of observing.

*Note.— It should be noted that human factors principles should be observed in the design of these systems as well as of other systems and equipment used in the provision of meteorological service to international air navigation. Guidance material on the matter is given in the Human Factors Training Manual (Doc 9683).*

2.1.3 High-quality and timely meteorological observations and reports for international air navigation are the foundation upon which an effective aeronautical meteorological service is based and of direct consequence to aviation safety. In view of this, the provision of meteorological observations and reports must form an integral part of the quality system established by the meteorological authority.

2.1.4 To the extent practicable, aerodrome observations are made at locations considered to be suitable for representative measurements of elements affecting aircraft during take-off and landing operations. Details in respect of these locations are given in Appendix B, and the aeronautical requirements for the operationally desirable accuracy of meteorological observations are given in Annex 3, Attachment A.

### 2.2 AERODROME OBSERVATIONS AND REPORTS

2.2.1 At aerodromes, routine observations are made and reported at hourly or half-hourly intervals depending on regional air navigation agreement. When required as a result of specified operationally significant changes in the meteorological conditions, special observations and reports are made whenever such changes occur between routine observations (see 2.4).

2.2.2 Observational data are combined into a report for dissemination at the local aerodrome or beyond (see Examples 2-1 and 2-2). Depending on their use, the reports are presented in two forms, i.e. as local routine reports (or MET REPORTS) and local special reports (or SPECIAL) in abbreviated plain language intended for dissemination and use at the aerodrome of origin or as an aerodrome routine meteorological report (METAR) and aerodrome special meteorological report (SPECI) intended for dissemination and use beyond the aerodrome of origin.

2.2.3 The issuance of SPECI is not necessary if METAR are issued at half-hour intervals.

2.2.4 The need to provide aeronautical users with two reports, one for local aerodrome use and one for use beyond the aerodrome, is to meet operational requirements as follows:

- a) local routine reports and local special reports for aircraft about to land or take off including requirements for automatic terminal information service (ATIS) (voice-ATIS and D-ATIS); and
- b) METAR/SPECI for flight planning and en-route flight information service purposes, including requirements for meteorological information for aircraft in flight (VOLMET) broadcasts and D-VOLMET.

The information in both reports, therefore, differs slightly to fully reflect the respective operational requirements. Technical specifications for local routine reports, local special reports, METAR and SPECI are in a set of detailed templates relating to individual portions and groups in the reports contained in Annex 3, Appendix 3, Tables A3-1 and A3-2. The appendix also contains technical specifications concerning trend forecasts, which are attached to local routine reports, local special reports, and METAR/SPECI, as required. These forecasts are dealt with in 3.5.

2.2.5 Local routine reports and local special reports, METAR and SPECI from fully automatic systems can be used without human intervention as depicted in Table 2-1. This only concerns States that are in a position to use automatic systems. Caution should be exercised in using reports from fully automatic systems in areas with rugged topography or with complex climatological regimes.

**Table 2-1. Use of reports from fully automatic systems, without human intervention**

<i>Hours of aerodrome</i>	<i>Type of report</i>		<i>Remarks</i>
	<i>Local routine reports and local special reports</i>	<i>METAR/SPECI</i>	
Operational hours	As determined by the meteorological authority in consultation with users		Decision to be based on the availability and efficient use of personnel
Non-operational hours	Not applicable	Acceptable	No local reports issued during non-operational hours of the aerodrome

2.2.6 Local routine reports and local special reports are supplied to ATS units which use them, together with any information obtained from their own duplicate displays (e.g. wind, height of cloud base or runway visual range (RVR) displays of automatic meteorological observing systems) or supplementary visual observations taken by ATS personnel, in order to provide the required OPMET information to aircraft taking off or landing. These reports are supplied to aircraft by ATS units by air-ground data link, by directed transmissions and/or through broadcasts. Further details on coordination between meteorological offices/stations and ATS units in this and other respects are given in the *Manual on Coordination between Air Traffic Services, Aeronautical Information Services and Aeronautical Meteorological Services* (Doc 9377).

**Example 2-1. Routine reports**

- a) *Local routine report (same location and weather conditions as METAR):*

MET REPORT YUDO\* 221630Z WIND 240/5MPS VIS 600M RVR RWY 12 TDZ 1000M MOD DZ FG CLD SCT 300M OVC 600M T17 DP16 QNH 1018HPA

- b) *METAR for YUDO:*

METAR YUDO\* 221630Z 24004MPS 0800 R12/1000U DZ FG SCT010 OVC020 17/16 Q1018

*Meaning of both reports:*

Local routine report or METAR for Donlon/International\* issued on the 22nd of the month at 1630 UTC; surface wind direction 240 degrees; wind speed 5 or 4 metres per second (10 or 8 kt) (averaged over 2 or 10 minutes, respectively); visibility 600 metres (along the runway(s) in the local routine report); prevailing visibility 800 metres (in METAR); runway visual range representative of the touchdown zone for runway 12 is 1 000 metres (averaged over 1 or 10 minutes, respectively), and the runway visual range values have shown an upward tendency during the previous 10 minutes (RVR tendency to be included in METAR only); moderate drizzle and fog; scattered cloud at 300 metres (1 000 feet); overcast at 600 metres (2 000 feet); air temperature 17 degrees Celsius; dew point temperature 16 degrees Celsius; QNH 1 018 hectopascals.

\* Fictitious location

**Example 2-2. Special reports**

- a) *Local special report (same location and weather conditions as SPECI):*

SPECIAL YUDO\* 151115Z WIND 050/26KT MAX37 MNM10 VIS 1000M RVR RWY 12 1200M HVY TSRA CLD BKN CB 500FT T25 DP22 QNH 1008HPA

- b) *SPECI for YUDO:*

SPECI YUDO\* 151115Z 05025G37KT 2000 1000S R12/1200N +TSRA BKN005CB 25/22 Q1008

*Meaning of both reports:*

Local special report or SPECI for Donlon/International\* issued on the 15th of the month at 1115 UTC; surface wind direction 050 degrees; wind speed 26 or 25 knots (averaged over 2 or 10 minutes, respectively) gusting between 10 and 37 knots (in SPECI: "gusting to 37 knots"); visibility 1 000 metres (along the runway(s) in the local special report); prevailing visibility 2 000 metres (in SPECI) with minimum visibility 1 000 metres to south (directional variations to be included in SPECI only); runway visual range representative of the touchdown zone for runway 12 is 1 200 metres (averaged over 1 and 10 minutes, respectively), (in SPECI: "no distinct tendency detected" in runway visual range values during previous 10 minutes); thunderstorm with heavy rain; broken cumulonimbus cloud at 500 feet; air temperature 25 degrees Celsius; dew point temperature 22 degrees Celsius; QNH 1 008 hectopascals.

\* Fictitious location

## 2.3 ROUTINE REPORTS

2.3.1 Paragraphs 2.3.4 to 2.3.17 deal with the content and format of routine reports; both those in abbreviated plain language disseminated locally (local routine reports or MET REPORTs) and those disseminated beyond the aerodrome of origin (METAR). Local special reports (SPECIALs) and special reports disseminated beyond the aerodrome of their origin (SPECI) are dealt with in 2.4. Practices relating to the transmission of local reports by local ATS units to aircraft taking off and landing are given in Doc 9377.

2.3.2 The METAR and SPECI code forms were developed by the World Meteorological Organization (WMO) on the basis of aeronautical requirements established by ICAO. These code forms and local reports use the approved ICAO abbreviations contained in the *Procedures for Air Navigation Services — ICAO Abbreviations and Codes* (PANS-ABC, Doc 8400). In view of this, METAR and SPECI in alphanumeric format are human-readable.

*Note 1.— All details relating to the METAR and SPECI code forms in alphanumeric format are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.1, Part A — Alphanumeric Codes.*

*Note 2.— Units of measurement differ in some States depending on national practices. In this manual, all units are those prescribed by Annex 5 — Units of Measurement to be Used in Air and Ground Operations as primary or alternative units. As regards elements for which two units are permitted, numerical criteria are given for both units, and examples of reports are given in one or the other unit.*

*Note 3.— Details concerning requirements for the exchange of these reports between meteorological offices/stations can be found in the relevant electronic regional air navigation plan (eANP), Volume II, for the various ICAO regions.*

*Note 4.— Selected criteria applicable to meteorological information referred to in 2.3.7 to 2.3.15 for inclusion in aerodrome reports are given in Annex 3, Attachment C.*

2.3.3 Additionally, METAR and SPECI are to be disseminated in IWXXM GML form, which are only machine-readable.

*Note 1.— The technical specifications for IWXXM are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.3, Part D — Representation Derived from Data Models. Guidance on the implementation of IWXXM is provided in the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (IWXXM) (Doc 10003).*

*Note 2. — Geography markup language (GML) is an encoding standard of the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC).*

*Note 3.— This manual deals only with METAR and SPECI in alphanumeric format, unless indicated otherwise.*

### 2.3.4 Identification of the type of report

(MET REPORT) — Local routine report

(METAR) — METAR

In the event of an error being disseminated in METAR, a corrected METAR should be issued using the entry «METAR COR» in place of «METAR».

### 2.3.5 Location indicator

(YUDO) in both reports

ICAO four-letter location indicator for the aerodrome for which the report is made. (The full name of the aerodrome is used in the transmission to aircraft.)

*Note.*— The indicators are prescribed in Doc 7910 — Location Indicators.

### 2.3.6 Time of the observation

(221630Z) in both reports

Day and actual time of observation: day of the month and time in hours and minutes, in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

### 2.3.7 Identification of an automated or a missing report

(AUTO or NIL) — NIL in METAR only

In the case of local routine reports and METAR from automatic observing systems with no human intervention, the report is to be identified with “AUTO”. In the event of missing METAR, the abbreviation “NIL” should be used.

*Note.*— Any meteorological element listed under 2.3.8 to 2.3.16 may temporarily be replaced by slashes (/) if the element is: a) missing; or b) considered as incorrect. Each digit of the space allocation is replaced by “/” in the text message and indicated as “missing” in the IWXXM GML version. However, in accordance with 2.1.2, in case of a failure of the integrated automatic system, backup procedures are expected to be in place, and slashes should therefore be used only exceptionally, i.e. as a last resort.

### 2.3.8 Surface wind

(WIND 240/5MPS) — Local routine report

(24004MPS) — METAR

*Note.*— Anemometers are to be installed at a standard height of approximately 10 m (30 ft). Guidance is given in the Guide to Instruments and Methods of Observation (WMO-No. 8), regarding the effects of variations in anemometer height on the wind measurement. This relationship depends upon the roughness length (i.e. the number and size of buildings in the vicinity of the anemometer and the general terrain of the surrounding area) of the site concerned. However, it could normally be expected that variations in measurement would be within the desirable accuracy of measurement, given in Annex 3, Attachment A, with anemometer heights between 9 m (27 ft) and 11 m (33 ft).

2.3.8.1 Wind observations in local routine reports used for arriving or departing aircraft should be representative of the touchdown zone and the conditions along the runway, respectively. Positions of wind sensors along individual runways should be indicated in local routine reports together with the reported wind data by the sections of the runway for which the wind data are to be representative. When wind observations are available from more than one runway in use, the indication of the relevant runway should also be attached to the wind data in local routine reports. Surface wind observations included in the METAR should be representative of the whole runway complex at the aerodrome, and no indication of the runway or runway sections should be included therein.

2.3.8.2 Direction (true) from which surface wind is blowing should be indicated in degrees rounded off to the nearest 10°. The unit used for wind speed should be indicated both in local routine reports and METAR. In local routine reports, the term “CALM” is used when a wind speed of less than 0.5 m/s (1 kt) is observed. Wind speed of 50 m/s (100 kt) or more is to be indicated as ABV49MPS or ABV99KT.

*Note 1.— Wind direction reported to aircraft for landing or take-off purposes must be converted into degrees magnetic. This conversion is normally carried out by the ATS unit concerned.*

*Note 2.— For wind speed, either metres per second or knots may be used.*

2.3.8.3 In local reports, surface wind should be based on an averaging period of two minutes.

2.3.8.4 In METAR, surface wind should be based on an averaging period of ten minutes, except that when the ten-minute period includes a marked discontinuity in the wind direction and/or speed, only data occurring since the discontinuity should be used for obtaining mean values, and the time interval should be correspondingly reduced. A marked discontinuity occurs when there is an abrupt and sustained change in wind direction of 30° or more, with a wind speed of 5 m/s (10 kt) before or after the change, or a change in wind speed of 5 m/s (10 kt) or more, lasting at least two minutes. The wind direction should be reported in steps of 10° using three figures, e.g. 030 or 240. The wind speed is reported in steps of one metre per second or one knot using two figures, e.g. 05 or 15, supplemented by the units used (MPS or KT) (see 2.3.9.3 a) and b)). Calm conditions are reported as 00000.

### 2.3.9 Significant speed and directional variations

2.3.9.1 Variations of wind direction and speed given in meteorological reports always refer to the ten-minute period preceding the observation.

2.3.9.2 In local routine reports and METAR (see Table 2-2), directional variations are indicated when the wind direction varies by 60° or more and when:

- a) the mean speed is 1.5 m/s (3 kt) or more **and** the wind direction varies by less than 180°:
  - 1) report the two extreme directions (reported clockwise) between which the wind has varied, in degrees, after indication of the mean wind direction and speed, for example: mean surface wind direction 10°; wind speed 9 kt; wind direction variable between 350° and 050°:
    - i) in local routine reports: "WIND 010/9KT VRB BTN 350/ AND 050/";
    - ii) in METAR: "01009KT 350V050";
- b) the mean speed is less than 1.5 m/s (3 kt) **and** the wind direction varies by less than 180°:
  - 2) indicate the wind direction by the term "variable" (VRB) followed by the mean wind speed, with no indication of the mean wind direction, e.g.: mean surface wind direction 10°, wind speed 1 m/s, wind direction variable between 350° and 050°:
    - i) in local routine reports: "WIND VRB1MPS";
    - ii) in METAR: "VRB01MPS";
- c) the wind direction varies by 180° or more:
  - 3) indicate the wind direction by the term VRB followed by the mean wind speed, with no indication of the mean wind direction, e.g.: mean surface wind direction 10°, wind speed 5 m/s; wind direction variable between 350° and 190°:
    - i) in local routine reports: "WIND VRB5MPS";



ii) in METAR: “VRB05MPS”.

2.3.9.3 When the wind is gusty, with variations from the mean wind speed (gusts) exceeding 5 m/s (10 kt), speed variations are indicated (see Table 2-3). When noise abatement procedures are applied in accordance with the *Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Air Traffic Management* (PANS-ATM, Doc 4444), wind speed (gusts) exceeding 2.5 m/s (5 kt) are indicated in local routine reports. Speed variations are given:

- a) in local routine reports, as the maximum and minimum values of the wind speed, after indication of the mean wind direction and speed, in the form “WIND 180/10MPS MAX 18 MNM5” or “WIND 180/20KT MAX 35 MNM 10”; and
- b) in METAR, as the maximum value of the wind speed, after indication of the mean wind direction and speed and preceded by the letter indicator G (for gusts). The minimum wind speed is never included. When wind speed is 50 m/s (100 kt) or more, the wind speed is reported as P49MPS (P99KT).

**Table 2-2. Reporting procedures related to directional variations of wind.**  
**ddd = mean wind direction, ddd<sub>1</sub> and ddd<sub>2</sub> = extreme wind directions,  $\Delta = |ddd_1 - ddd_2|$ ,**  
**VV = mean wind speed. Averaging period applied indicated as a subscript.**  
**V = indicator of variability.**

Type of report	Directional variations during preceding 10 minutes			
	$\Delta < 60^\circ$	$\Delta \geq 60^\circ$		
		VV $\geq$ 1.5 m/s (3 kt)		VV < 1.5 m/s (3 kt) [but VV $\geq$ 0.5 m/s (1 kt)]*
		$\Delta < 180^\circ$	$\Delta \geq 180^\circ$	
Local routine report	ddd/VV <sub>2 min</sub>	ddd/VV <sub>2 min</sub> VRB BTN ddd <sub>1</sub> / AND ddd <sub>2</sub> **	VRB/VV <sub>2 min</sub>	VRB/VV <sub>2 min</sub>
METAR	dddVV <sub>10 min</sub>	dddVV <sub>10 min</sub> ddd <sub>1</sub> Vddd <sub>2</sub> **	VRBVV <sub>10 min</sub>	VRBVV <sub>10 min</sub>
* If VV < 0.5 m/s (1 kt), the wind shall be reported as “CALM” and “00000” in local routine reports and METAR, respectively. ** ddd <sub>1</sub> ddd <sub>2</sub> in clockwise order.				

**Table 2-3. Reporting procedures related to speed variations of wind.**  
**ddd = mean wind direction,  $VV_{\min}$  and  $VV_{\max}$  = minimum and maximum**  
**wind speed,  $VV$  = mean wind speed. Averaging period applied**  
**indicated as a subscript. G = indicator for gusts.**

Type of report	Speed variations during preceding ten minutes	
	$\Delta \leq 5$ m/s (10 kt)	$\Delta > 5$ m/s (10 kt)*
Local routine report	ddd/ $VV_{2 \min}$	ddd/ $VV_{2 \min}$ MAX $VV_{\max}$ MNM $VV_{\min}$
METAR	ddd $VV_{10 \min}$	ddd $VV_{10 \min}$ G $VV_{\max}$
* 2.5 m/s (5 kt) in local routine reports when noise abatement procedures are applied.		

### 2.3.10 Visibility

(VIS 600M RVR RWY 12 TDZ 1000M) — Local routine report  
 (0800 R12/1000U) — METAR

2.3.10.1 Visibility may be observed by a human observer or measured by instruments. The following definition for visibility for aeronautical purposes applies.

Visibility for aeronautical purposes is the greater of:

- the greatest distance at which a black object of suitable dimensions, situated near the ground, can be seen and recognized when observed against a bright background; and
- the greatest distance at which lights in the vicinity of 1 000 candelas can be seen and identified against an unlit background.

*Note 1.— The two distances have different values in air of a given extinction coefficient, and the latter (b) varies with the background illumination. The former (a) is represented by the meteorological optical range.*

*Note 2.— Guidance on the conversion of instrumented readings into visibility is given in Annex 3, Attachment D.*

*Note 3.— Transmissometers and/or forward-scatter meters should be used as sensors in instrumented systems for the measurement of visibility.*

2.3.10.2 In local routine reports used for:

- departing aircraft*, the visibility observations should be representative of the conditions along the runway; and
- arriving aircraft*, the visibility observations should be representative of the touchdown zone.

In METAR, visibility observations should be representative of the aerodrome. In such observations, special attention should be paid to significant directional variations in visibility.

2.3.10.3 In local routine reports and METAR, visibility is reported in steps of: 50 m when visibility is less than 800 m; 100 m when visibility is 800 m or more but less than 5 km; and 1 km when visibility is 5 km or more but less than 10 km. When visibility is 10 km or more, it is given as 10 km, except when conditions for the use of CAVOK apply (see Annex 3, Appendix 3, 2.2). Any observed value that does not fit the reporting scale in use shall be rounded down to the nearest lower step in the scale.

2.3.10.4 When instrumented systems are used, the averaging period should be one minute for local routine reports.

2.3.10.5 In local routine reports, visibility along the runway(s) is reported together with the units of measurement, e.g. "VIS 600M". When the visibility is observed for more than one runway in use and at more than one location along the runway, the relevant runways and locations along the runways should be identified and attached to the reported value(s) of visibility, e.g. "VIS RWY 19 TDZ 6KM".

2.3.10.6 When instrumented systems are used, the averaging period should be ten minutes for METAR.

2.3.10.7 In METAR, prevailing visibility is reported. Prevailing visibility is defined as the greatest visibility value which is reached at least within half the horizon circle or within half of the aerodrome surface. This could be formed by sectors, which could be contiguous or non-contiguous. Examples of various situations are given in Figure 2-1 together with an assessment of how the prevailing visibility would be reported in each case. Where instrumented systems are used for the measurement of visibility at an aerodrome (often used for the assessment of RVR as well), the prevailing visibility can be obtained based on the visibility measured in certain sectors by these instruments. Detailed guidance is given in Appendix C of this manual for the reporting of prevailing visibility using fully automatic observing systems.

2.3.10.8 In METAR, visibility is reported by four figures (0200, 1500, 4000 etc.). When visibility is 10 km and above and the conditions for the use of CAVOK do not apply, visibility is indicated as 9999. When the visibility is not the same in different directions and when the lowest visibility is different from the prevailing visibility and:

- a) less than 1 500 m; or
- b) less than 50 per cent of the prevailing visibility and less than 5 000 m,

the lowest visibility observed should also be reported and, when possible, its general direction in relation to the aerodrome reference point indicated by reference to one of the eight points of the compass, e.g. "2000 1200NW". If the prevailing visibility cannot be determined due to rapid fluctuation, the lowest visibility should be reported with no indication of direction (see Figure 2-1 and Table 2-4).

Determining visibility (sectors* considered for prevailing visibility indicated by shading)		Minimum visibility	Prevailing visibility																	
<p>1. Four sectors</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Visibility (metres)</th> <th>Approximate degrees</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>5 000</td> <td>90</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 500</td> <td>90</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2" style="text-align: right;">} 180</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 000</td> <td>90</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 500</td> <td>90</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Visibility (metres)	Approximate degrees	5 000	90	2 500	90	} 180		2 000	90	1 500	90		<p>1 500 (not reported, as per 2.3.10.8)</p>	<p>2 500</p>				
Visibility (metres)	Approximate degrees																			
5 000	90																			
2 500	90																			
} 180																				
2 000	90																			
1 500	90																			
<p>2. Five sectors</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Visibility (metres)</th> <th>Approximate degrees</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>5 000</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 500</td> <td>90</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 000</td> <td>130</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2" style="text-align: right;">} 270</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 500</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 000</td> <td>40</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Visibility (metres)	Approximate degrees	5 000	50	2 500	90	2 000	130	} 270		1 500	50	1 000	40		<p>1 000 (reported, as per 2.3.10.8)</p>	<p>2 000</p>		
Visibility (metres)	Approximate degrees																			
5 000	50																			
2 500	90																			
2 000	130																			
} 270																				
1 500	50																			
1 000	40																			
<p>3. Six sectors</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Visibility (metres)</th> <th>Approximate degrees</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>5 000</td> <td>60</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3 000</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 500</td> <td>80</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2" style="text-align: right;">} 190</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2 000</td> <td>90</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 500</td> <td>70</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 000</td> <td>10</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Visibility (metres)	Approximate degrees	5 000	60	3 000	50	2 500	80	} 190		2 000	90	1 500	70	1 000	10		<p>1 000 (reported, as per 2.3.10.8)</p>	<p>2 500</p>
Visibility (metres)	Approximate degrees																			
5 000	60																			
3 000	50																			
2 500	80																			
} 190																				
2 000	90																			
1 500	70																			
1 000	10																			

\* Sectors represent hypothetical situations with different visibility conditions.

**Figure 2-1. Determination of “prevailing visibility” under three hypothetical visibility conditions**

*Note.— «Minimum visibility» is to be reported together with «prevailing visibility» in the second and third examples.*

**Table 2-4. Reporting procedures related to visibility — to be applied in METAR in the case of directional variations**

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Action</i>
VIS not the same in different directions, with the lowest VIS 1 500 m or more <b>and</b> 50 per cent or more of the prevailing VIS	Report the prevailing VIS
The lowest VIS is less than 50 per cent of the prevailing VIS and less than 5 000 m  or  The lowest VIS is less than 1 500 m  <i>Note.— If the lowest VIS is observed in more than one direction, include the most operationally significant direction.</i>	Report the prevailing VIS together with the lowest VIS with its general direction in relation to the aerodrome. Example: "2000 1200S"
VIS fluctuating rapidly; the prevailing VIS cannot be given  <i>Note.— Direction is to be reported by reference to one of the eight points of the compass.</i>	Report lowest VIS without indication of direction

**2.3.11 RVR**

(RVR RWY 12 TDZ 1000M) — Local routine report

(R12/1000U) — METAR

2.3.11.1 RVR should be reported whenever visibility or RVR is less than 1 500 m, particularly at aerodromes having precision approach runways or runways used for take-off with high-intensity edge lights and/or centre line lights, including aerodromes with runways intended for Category I approach and landing operations. RVR is reported using instrumented systems at all runways intended for Category II or III instrument approach and landing operations. Steps of 25 m are used for RVR below 400 m, steps of 50 m for RVR between 400 m and 800 m and steps of 100 m for RVR above 800 m. RVR values which do not fit the reporting scale are rounded down to the next lower step in the scale.

2.3.11.2 In local routine reports, one-minute mean values are reported. RVR is reported in metres with an indication of the unit, and the runway(s) to which the values refer, e.g. RVR RWY 20: 500M RVR RWY 26: 800M (RVR runway 20: 500 metres, RVR runway 26: 800 metres). If RVR is observed for more than one position along a runway, the value representative of the touchdown zone is given first, followed by the locations representative of the mid-point and stop-end, e.g. RVR RWY 16 TDZ 600M MID 500M END 400M (RVR runway 16 at the touchdown zone 600 metres, at the mid-point 500 metres and at the stop-end 400 metres). When RVR is above the maximum value that can be determined by the system in use, it is reported in the form RVR ABV 1200M where 1 200 m is the maximum value for that system. When RVR is below the minimum value that can be determined by the system in use, it is reported in the form RVR BLW 150M, where 150 m is the minimum value for that system. For assessment of RVR, 50 m is considered the lower limit and 2 000 m the upper limit. The RVR reporting range from 1 500 to 2 000 m caters to cases in which the visibility is less than 1 500 m combined with an RVR above 1 500 m. (If both visibility and RVR were above 1 500 m, no RVR would be reported.) Outside these limits of 50 and 2 000 m, reports merely indicate that the RVR is less than 50 m or more than 2 000 m in the form RVR BLW 50M (RVR below 50 metres) or RVR ABV 2 000M (RVR above 2 000 metres), respectively.

2.3.11.3 The provisions given in 2.3.11.1 also apply to METAR. In these reports, RVR values in metres are reported by four figures preceded by the letter indicator R and the runway designator in two figures (e.g. R12/0500, R26/1200). Additional reporting procedures are given in Table 2-5.

*Note 1.— RVR is the best possible assessment of “the range over which the pilot of an aircraft on the centre line of a runway can see the runway surface markings or the lights delineating the runway or identifying its centre line”. RVR should be assessed at a height of approximately 2.5 m (7.5 ft) above the runway for instrumented systems or assessed at a height of approximately 5 m (15 ft) above the runway by a human observer. This assessment should therefore be based on readings of transmissometers or forward-scatter meters for CAT I, CAT II and CAT III runways or, for non-precision runways, by an observer counting markers, runway lights or, in some cases, specially installed lights on the side of the runway.*

*Note 2.— Detailed information on RVR observing and reporting is contained in the Manual of Runway Visual Range Observing and Reporting Practices (Doc 9328).*

### 2.3.12 Present weather

(MOD DZ FG) — Local routine report

(DZ FG) — METAR

2.3.12.1 As a minimum, the following weather phenomena are to be identified and reported:

- a) rain, drizzle or snow (and its intensity);
- b) freezing precipitation (and its intensity);
- c) haze, mist and fog;
- d) freezing fog; and
- e) thunderstorms (also those occurring in the vicinity).

2.3.12.2 In local routine reports, present weather information should be representative of conditions at the aerodrome, i.e. within a radius of approximately 8 km of the aerodrome reference point. The word “approximately” is used to cater for aerodromes that have perimeters which are not precisely a radius of 8 km from the aerodrome reference point. In METAR, present weather information should be representative of conditions at the aerodrome and, for certain specified present weather phenomena, in its vicinity, i.e. the area that lies within a radius of approximately 8 km and 16 km of the aerodrome reference point.

2.3.12.3 In local routine reports, present weather phenomena are reported in terms of types and characteristics and are qualified with respect to intensity, as appropriate.

2.3.12.4 In METAR, present weather phenomena are reported in terms of types and characteristics and are qualified with respect to intensity or proximity to the aerodrome, as appropriate.

2.3.12.5 The *types* of present weather phenomena of significance to aviation, their respective abbreviations and relevant criteria for their reporting are given in Table 2-6.

2.3.12.6 The *characteristics* of present weather phenomena that are reported, as necessary, and their respective abbreviations are given in Table 2-7.

2.3.12.7 The relevant *intensity* or, as appropriate, the *proximity* to the aerodrome of reported present weather phenomena are indicated in Table 2-8. The proximity indicator is used only in METAR.

**Table 2-5. Additional reporting procedures related to RVR data in METAR**

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Reporting procedure</i>
More than one runway in use	Include all such runways up to a maximum of four. RVR values from parallel runways may be included in a report by attaching "L, C, R" (L = left, C = centre, R = right) to the runway designator D <sub>r</sub> D <sub>r</sub> )
Section of the runway	Only the value representative of the touchdown zone is given, without indication of position.
RVR information determined using instruments	Report the mean value during the ten-minute period immediately preceding the observation
When RVR is greater than the maximum value which can be determined by the system in use	Report the highest value which can be determined by the system preceded by the letter indicator P
When RVR is below the minimum value which can be determined by the system in use	Report the lowest value which can be determined by the system preceded by the letter indicator M
When RVR is more than 2 000 m	Report 2000 preceded by the letter indicator P
When RVR is less than 50 m	Report 0050 preceded by the letter indicator M
Discontinuities in RVR values	If the ten-minute period immediately preceding the observation includes a marked discontinuity in RVR values, only those values occurring after the discontinuity should be used to obtain mean values and variations. A marked discontinuity occurs when there is an abrupt and sustained change in RVR, lasting at least two minutes, which reaches or passes through the values 800, 550, 300 and 175 m.
Tendency in RVR values	If the RVR values during the ten-minute period have shown a distinct tendency, such that the mean value during the first five minutes varies by 100 m or more from the mean value during the second five minutes of the period, this should be indicated as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) when the variation of the RVR values shows an upward or downward tendency, this should be indicated by "U" or "D", respectively, appended to relevant RVR values in the form "R12/1000U";</li> <li>b) when actual fluctuations during the ten-minute period indicate no distinct tendency, this should be reported using the indicator "N" appended to relevant RVR values in the form "R12/1000N"; and</li> <li>c) when indications of tendency are not available, no indicator should be included.</li> </ul>

Table 2-6. Types of present weather phenomena

<i>Type</i>	<i>Phenomenon</i>	<i>Abbreviation*</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Precipitation	Drizzle	DZ	
	Rain	RA	
	Snow	SN	
	Snow grains	SG	
	Ice pellets	PL	
	Hail	GR	Reported when diameter of largest hailstones is 5 mm or more
	Small hail and/or snow pellets	GS	Reported when diameter of largest hailstones is less than 5 mm
	Unknown precipitation	UP	Reported for unidentified precipitation only when automatic observing systems are used
Obscurations (hydrometeors)	Fog	FG	Reported when visibility is less than 1 000 m, except when qualified by "MI", "BC", "PR" or "VC"
	Mist	BR	Reported when visibility is at least 1 000 m but not more than 5 000 m
Obscurations (lithometeors)	Sand	SA	Reported only when the obscuration consists predominantly of lithometeors and the visibility is 5 000 m or less except "SA" when qualified by "DR" and volcanic ash
	Dust (widespread)	DU	
	Haze	HZ	
	Smoke	FU	
	Volcanic ash	VA	
Other phenomena	Dust/sand whirls (dust devils)	PO	
	Squall	SQ	
	Funnel cloud (tornado or waterspout)	FC	
	Duststorm	DS	
	Sandstorm	SS	

\* Used in both local routine reports and METAR.



**Table 2-7. Characteristics of present weather phenomena**

<i>Characteristic</i>	<i>Abbreviation*</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Thunderstorm	TS	Used to report a thunderstorm with rain "TSRA", snow "TSSN", ice pellets "TSPL", hail "TSGR", small hail and/or snow pellets "TSGS", unknown precipitation "TSUP" (automatic observing systems only) or combinations thereof, for example, "TSRASN". When thunder is heard during the ten-minute period preceding the time of observation but no precipitation is observed at the aerodrome, the abbreviation "TS" is used without qualification.  <i>Note.— At aerodromes with human observers, lightning detection equipment may supplement human observations. For aerodromes with automatic observing systems, guidance on the use of lightning detection equipment intended for thunderstorm reporting is given in the Manual on Automatic Meteorological Observing Systems at Aerodromes (Doc 9837).</i>
Shower	SH	Used to report showers of rain "SHRA", snow "SHSN", ice pellets "SHPL", hail "SHGR", small hail and/or snow pellets "SHGS", unknown precipitation "SHUP" (automatic observing systems only) or combinations thereof, for example, "SHRASN". In METAR, showers observed in the vicinity of the aerodrome should be reported as "VCSH" without qualification regarding type or intensity of precipitation.
Freezing	FZ	Supercooled water droplets or precipitation, used only with FG, DZ, RA and UP (automatic systems only).
Blowing	BL	Used to report DU, SA or SN raised by the wind to 2 m (7 ft) or more above ground level.
Low drifting	DR	Used to report DU, SA, or SN raised by the wind to less than 2 m (7 ft) above ground level.
Shallow	MI	Less than 2 m (7 ft) above ground level.
Patches	BC	Fog patches randomly covering the aerodrome.
Partial	PR	A substantial part of the aerodrome covered by fog while the remainder is clear.

\* Used in both local routine reports and METAR.

**Table 2-8. Intensity/proximity of present weather phenomena**

<i>Intensity/proximity</i>	<i>Local routine reports</i>	<i>METAR</i>
Light	FBL	–
Moderate	MOD	(no indication)
Heavy	HVY	+
used only with: DZ, FC (heavy used to indicate tornado or waterspout; moderate to indicate funnel cloud not reaching the ground), GR, GS, PL, RA, SG, SN and UP (automatic observing systems only), or in combinations involving these present weather types (in these cases, intensity refers to precipitation)		
DS, SS (in these cases, only moderate and heavy intensities to be indicated)		
Vicinity Between approximately 8 and 16 km of the aerodrome reference point and used only in METAR with the present weather in Table 2-6 when not reported under the characteristics of the present weather phenomena (Table 2-7)	not used	VC
<i>Note.— The actual range for which the qualifier vicinity is to be applied will be determined locally, in consultation with the civil aviation authority.</i>		

2.3.12.8 One or more, up to a maximum of three, of the present weather abbreviations given in Table 2-6 are to be used, as necessary, together with an indication, where appropriate, of the characteristics (Table 2-7) and intensity or proximity to the aerodrome (Table 2-8), so as to convey a complete description of the present weather at or near the aerodrome of significance to flight operations. The following general rules apply:

- a) an indication of intensity, or proximity (METAR only), as appropriate, is to be reported first;
- b) this is followed by both the characteristics and the type of weather phenomena in the form “HVY TSRA” (in local routine reports) and “+TSRA” (in METAR) or “VCFG” (in METAR only);
- c) where two different types of weather are observed, they are to be reported in two separate groups, in the form “HVY DZ FG” (in local routine reports) and “+DZ FG” (in METAR) or “–DZ VCFG” (in METAR only), where the intensity or proximity indicator refers to the weather phenomenon which follows the indicator; and
- d) different types of precipitation occurring at the time of observation are to be reported as a single group with the dominant type of precipitation reported first, preceded by only one intensity qualifier which refers to the intensity of the total precipitation, in the form “HVY” TSRASN (in local routine reports) and “+”TSRASN (in METAR) or “FBL SNRA FG” (in local routine reports) and “–SNRA FG” (in METAR).

2.3.12.9 In cases where the visibility is less than 1 000 m and the temperature is below minus 30° C it is unlikely that suspended supercooled water droplets are present (unless there are sources of open water nearby). Under these circumstances “FG” rather than “FZFG” is to be reported since airlines tend to experience operational penalties whenever FZFG is reported.

2.3.12.10 Additional criteria for the reporting of present weather phenomena are in Table 2-9.

**Table 2-9. Additional criteria for the reporting of present weather phenomena**

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Local routine reports</i>	<i>METAR</i>
More than one present weather phenomena occurring	Up to a maximum of three phenomena	Up to a maximum of three phenomena
Indication of the intensity and characteristics of the present weather phenomena required	Report the present weather in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) its intensity;</li> <li>2) its characteristics; and</li> <li>3) the present weather phenomenon</li> </ol> e.g. "HVY TSRA" (in local routine reports) and "+TSRA" (in METAR)	
Indication of the proximity of the present weather phenomena required	Do not report	Report the present weather in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) its proximity; and</li> <li>2) the present weather phenomenon</li> </ol> e.g. "VCFG" (METAR only)
Two different types of weather phenomena observed	Report in two separate groups The intensity indicator refers to the present weather phenomenon which follows the indicator e.g. "HVY DZ FG": the qualifier "HVY" refers to drizzle	The intensity or proximity indicator refers to the present weather phenomenon which follows the indicator. e.g. "+DZ FG": the qualifier "+" refers to drizzle  "DZ VCFG": the qualifier "VC" refers to fog
Different types of precipitation occurring	Report as one single group in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) intensity qualifier referring to the intensity of the total precipitation</li> <li>2) dominant type of precipitation</li> <li>3) secondary type of precipitation</li> </ol> e.g. "HVY TSRASN" or "FBL SNRA FG" (in local routine reports) "+TSRASN" or "-SNRA FG" (in METAR)	

### 2.3.13 Cloud

(CLD SCT 300M OVC 600M) — Local routine report

(SCT010 OVC020) — METAR

2.3.13.1 Cloud observations included in local routine reports should be representative of the runway threshold(s) in use. Cloud observations in METAR should be representative of the aerodrome and its vicinity, this combined area being the area within a radius of approximately 16 km of the aerodrome reference point.

2.3.13.2 The height of cloud base is reported in steps of 30 m (100 ft) up to 3 000 m (10 000 ft), together with the units used, in the form “CLD 300M” or “CLD 1000FT” in local routine reports and in the form “010” in METAR. In local routine reports from aerodromes where low-visibility procedures are established for approach and landing, as agreed between the meteorological authority and the appropriate ATS authority, the height of cloud base may be reported in steps of 15 m (50 ft) up to 90 m (300 ft) and in steps of 30 m (100 ft) between 90 m (300 ft) and 3 000 m (10 000 ft), together with the units used, in the form “CLD 45M” or “CLD 150FT”. Any observed value which does not fit the reporting scale in use must be rounded down to the nearest lower step in the scale.

*Note 1.— The reporting increments to be used above 3 000 m (10 000 ft) are not specified in Annex 3 since only clouds of operational significance are to be reported, and clouds of operational significance with bases exceeding 3 000 m (10 000 ft) (i.e. cumulonimbus (CB) and/or towering cumulus (TCU) clouds) only occur under exceptional conditions.*

*Note 2.— Clouds of operational significance are clouds with a height of cloud base below 1 500 m (5 000 ft) or below the highest minimum sector altitude, whichever is greater or a CB cloud or TCU cloud at any height. TCU is used to indicate cumulus congestus clouds of great vertical extent. Guidance on the reporting of CB and TCU is provided in Doc 9837, 7.4.4.*

2.3.13.3 In local routine reports and METAR, only clouds of operational significance are to be reported. Cloud amount is given using the abbreviations FEW (1-2 oktas)\*, SCT (3-4 oktas), BKN (5-7 oktas) or OVC (8 oktas). The type of cloud is identified only for CB and TCU clouds when observed at or near the aerodrome. When several layers or masses of cloud of operational significance are observed, their amount, type (CB and TCU only) and height of cloud base should be reported in increasing order of the height of cloud base and in accordance with the following criteria:

- a) the lowest layer or mass, regardless of amount, reported as FEW, SCT, BKN or OVC, as appropriate;
- b) the next layer or mass, covering more than 2 oktas, reported as SCT, BKN or OVC, as appropriate;
- c) the next higher layer or mass, covering more than 4 oktas, reported as BKN or OVC, as appropriate; and
- d) CB and/or TCU clouds independently of their height(s) of cloud base, whenever observed and not reported in previous parts of the report.

2.3.13.4 When an individual layer or mass of cloud is composed of CB and TCU clouds with a common cloud base, the type of cloud is reported as CB only.

2.3.13.5 If no clouds of operational significance are present and no restriction on vertical visibility exists and the abbreviation “CAVOK” is not appropriate, the abbreviation “NSC” (i.e. nil significant cloud) should be used.

---

\* Eighths of the sky.

*Note 1.— The term CAVOK is used when the following visibility/cloud/weather conditions occur simultaneously:*

- Visibility: 10 km or more, and the lowest visibility is not reported.
- Cloud: No cloud of operational significance.
- Weather: No weather of significance to aviation as given in Tables 2-6 and 2-7.

*Note 2.— In local routine reports used for arriving aircraft, where a precision approach runway has a touchdown elevation of 15 m (50 ft) or more below the aerodrome elevation, arrangements are made for height of cloud base to be given with reference to the touchdown elevation.*

*Note 3.— In reports from offshore structures, the height of cloud base is given above mean sea level.*

2.3.13.6 When the cloud base is diffused or ragged or fluctuating rapidly, the minimum height of the cloud, or cloud fragments, is given.

2.3.13.7 Where local routine reports include cloud base data from more than one runway in use, the runway indication should be attached to the reported cloud base data, e.g. “CLD RWY 08 BKN 200FT”.

2.3.13.8 When the sky is obscured, the observations of vertical visibility should be reported in lieu of cloud amount, cloud type and height of cloud base. The reporting steps for vertical visibility are 30 m (100 ft) up to 600 m (2 000 ft). In local routine reports from aerodromes where low-visibility procedures are established for approach and landing, as agreed between the meteorological authority and the appropriate ATS authority, the vertical visibility may be reported in steps of 15 m (50 ft) up to and including 90 m (300 ft) and in steps of 30 m (100 ft) between 90 m (300 ft) and 600 m (2 000 ft). In local routine reports, the abbreviations VER VIS (vertical visibility) are used, followed by the value of the vertical visibility and the units used, e.g. “CLD OBSC VER VIS 150M”. In METAR, the vertical visibility value is reported in the same manner as the height of cloud base preceded by the letter indicator VV. The absence of vertical visibility data in METAR is indicated by VV///. When the sky is obscured and the vertical visibility cannot be determined by an automatic observing system due to a temporary failure of a system/sensor, the vertical visibility should be replaced by “///”.

2.3.13.9 The reporting of vertical visibility, either by a human observer or an automated observing system, is known to pose certain observing challenges, such as the lack of a vertical visual reference. Comprehensive comparison studies on vertical visibility with respect to height of cloud base and present weather (such as fog) have identified that further improvements are necessary in respect of the quality of manual observations of vertical visibility through observer training and the quality of automated observations of vertical visibility through enhancement of the systems/sensors and the algorithms used. Certain States elect to use an equivalent height of cloud base as an alternative to the vertical visibility (e.g. reporting OVCnnn instead of VVnnn in a METAR), whereas other States prefer to retain the use of VVnnn (or VV///).

2.3.13.10 In automated local routine reports and METAR, when the cloud amount or cloud type cannot be identified by the automatic observing system, the cloud amount or cloud type in each cloud group should be replaced by “///”; when no clouds are detected by the automatic observing system, this should be indicated by using the abbreviation “NCD”. When CB or TCU are detected by the automatic observing system but the cloud amount and/or the height of cloud base cannot be observed, the cloud amount and/or the height of cloud base should be replaced by “///”.

### **2.3.14 Air temperature/dew point temperature**

(T17 DP16) — Local routine report  
(17/16) — METAR

2.3.14.1 Observations of air temperature and dew point temperature should be representative of the whole runway complex.

2.3.14.2 In local routine reports and METAR, the temperatures are reported in steps of whole degrees Celsius, with observed values involving 0.5° rounded up to the next higher whole degree Celsius, for example, +2.5°C is rounded up to +3°C and -2.5°C is rounded up to -2°C.

2.3.14.3 In local routine reports, the air temperature is identified by T and the dew point temperature by DP in the form T17 DP16 (temperature 17, dew point 16). For a temperature below 0°C, the value is preceded by MS (minus), e.g. TMS8.

2.3.14.4 Air temperature and dew point temperature values are reported in METAR in two figures separated by “/”, e.g. air temperature of +20.4 and dew point temperature of +8.7 are reported as “20/09”. Temperatures below 0°C are preceded by M (meaning minus). Temperatures in the range of -0.5°C to -0.1°C are reported as “M00”, while temperatures in the range of 0.0° to 0.4°C are reported as “00”.

### 2.3.15 Atmospheric pressure

(QNH 1018 HPA) — Local routine reports  
(Q1018) — METAR

2.3.15.1 QNH is the altimeter showing aerodrome elevation when the aircraft is on the ground and QNH is set on the altimeter sub-scale. QFE is the altimeter showing zero elevation when the aircraft is on the ground and QFE is set on the altimeter sub-scale. QFE is normally used only at the aerodrome where it is provided on request or, by local agreement, on a regular basis, in addition to QNH. Only QNH is included in METAR. QFE is used only in local routine reports.

*Note.— When a QFE altimeter setting is provided, it corresponds to the aerodrome elevation except for:*

- a) non-precision approach runways if the threshold is 2 m (7 ft) or more below the aerodrome elevation; and
- b) precision approach runways;

*in which cases, the QFE corresponds to the relevant runway threshold elevation.*

2.3.15.2 In local routine reports and METAR, atmospheric pressure is given in hectopascals, rounded down to the nearest lower whole hectopascal and reported in four figures, e.g. QNH 1011.4 is reported as “QNH 1011HPA” in local routine reports and “Q1011” in METAR, and QFE 995.6 is reported as “QFE 0995HPA” or “QFE RWY 18 0995HPA” (where the number of the runway is indicated).

### 2.3.16 Supplementary information

2.3.16.1 In local routine reports and METAR, supplementary information includes information on recent weather as given in Table 2-10, observed at the aerodrome during the period since the last issued routine report or last hour, whichever is the shorter, but not at the time of observation. Up to three groups of recent weather information selected from Table 2-10 may be included in these reports.

*Note.— The meteorological authority, in consultation with users, may agree not to provide recent weather information where SPECI are issued.*

2.3.16.2 Local routine reports may also include available supplementary information on significant meteorological conditions, particularly those in the approach or climb-out area. The abbreviations in Table 2-11 should be used in reporting this supplementary information.

*Note.— Observations of supplementary information, in particular the conditions relating to the occurrence of icing and turbulence, are often derived from aircraft observations during the approach and climb-out phases of flights. (For details concerning aircraft observations and reports, see Chapter 7.)*

**Table 2-10. Abbreviations to be used in reporting recent weather phenomena in local routine reports and METAR**

<i>Abbreviation</i>	<i>Phenomenon/Decode</i>
REFZDZ	Recent freezing drizzle
REFZRA	Recent freezing rain
REDZ	Recent drizzle (moderate or heavy)
RERA	Recent rain (moderate or heavy)
RESN	Recent snow (moderate or heavy)
RERASN	Recent rain and snow (moderate or heavy)
RESG	Recent snow grains (moderate or heavy)
REPL	Recent ice pellets (moderate or heavy)
RESHRA	Recent rain showers (moderate or heavy)
RESHSN	Recent snow showers (moderate or heavy)
RESHGR	Recent showers of hail (moderate or heavy)
RESHGS	Recent showers of small hail and/or snow pellets (moderate or heavy)
REBLSN	Recent blowing snow
RESS	Recent sandstorm
REDS	Recent duststorm
RETSRA	Recent thunderstorm with rain
RETSSN	Recent thunderstorm with snow
RETSGR	Recent thunderstorm with hail
RETSGS	Recent thunderstorm with small hail
RETS	Recent thunderstorm without precipitation
REFC	Recent funnel cloud (tornado or waterspout)
REVA	Recent volcanic ash
REUP	Recent unidentified precipitation (only when automatic observing systems are used)
REFZUP	Recent freezing rain with unidentified precipitation (only when automatic observing systems are used)
RETSUP	Recent thunderstorm with unidentified precipitation (only when automatic observing systems are used)
RESHUP	Recent showers of unidentified precipitation (only when automatic observing systems are used)

**Table 2-11. Supplementary information for inclusion in local routine reports**

<i>Abbreviation</i>	<i>Condition/Decode</i>
<i>a) Significant weather conditions</i>	
CB	Cumulonimbus
TS	Thunderstorm
MOD TURB	Moderate turbulence
SEV TURB	Severe turbulence
WS	Wind shear
GR	Hail
SEV SQL	Severe squall line
MOD ICE	Moderate icing
SEV ICE	Severe icing
FZDZ	Freezing drizzle
FZRA	Freezing rain
SEV MTW	Severe mountain wave
SS	Sandstorm
DS	Duststorm
BLSN	Blowing snow
FC	Funnel cloud (tornado or waterspout)
<i>b) Location</i>	
IN APCH	In the approach
IN CLIMB-OUT	In the climb-out
RWY	Runway
<i>Note.— Additional information may be included using abbreviated plain language.</i>	

2.3.16.3 In METAR, where local circumstances so warrant, wind shear should be included as necessary. Information on wind shear is added in the form “WS RWY 12” or “WS ALL RWY”.

*Note 1.— The “local circumstances” referred to above include, but are not necessarily limited to, wind shear of a non-transitory nature such as might be associated with low-level temperature inversions or local topography.*

*Note 2.— Warnings of wind shear in the climb-out and approach areas are detailed in Chapter 4.*

2.3.16.4 In METAR, in accordance with regional air navigation agreement, one additional group may be included as supplementary information: information on sea-surface temperature and the state of the sea or the significant wave height at aeronautical meteorological stations established on offshore structures in support of helicopter operations.



*Note 1.— The state of the sea is specified in WMO-No. 306, Volume I.1, Part C — Code Tables, Code Table 3700.*

*Note 2.— The significant wave height is to be reported in decimetres.*

### **2.3.17 Landing forecasts**

A landing forecast, in the form of a trend forecast, when provided by an aerodrome meteorological office, is attached to a local routine report as well as a METAR; details of the trend forecast are given in Annex 3, Appendix 3, Tables A3-1 and A3-2.

## **2.4 SPECIAL REPORTS**

### **2.4.1 Local special reports**

2.4.1.1 Local special reports are issued in addition to local routine reports to provide information on significant deterioration or improvement in aerodrome meteorological conditions at the aerodrome concerned. They are issued whenever one or more elements of a local routine report change in accordance with criteria established by the meteorological authority in consultation with the appropriate ATS authority, the operators and others concerned. These criteria include:

- a) values which correspond to the operating minima of the operators using the aerodrome;
- b) values which satisfy other local requirements of ATS units and the operators;
- c) an increase in air temperature of 2°C or more from that given in the latest report, or an alternative threshold value as agreed between the meteorological authority, the appropriate ATS authority and the operators concerned;
- d) the available supplementary information concerning the occurrence of significant meteorological conditions in the approach and climb-out areas;
- e) when noise abatement procedures are applied in accordance with Doc 4444 and the variation from the mean surface wind speed (gusts) has changed by 2.5 m/s (5 kt) or more from that given in the latest report, the mean speed before and/or after the change being 7.5 m/s (15 kt) or more; and
- f) the criteria given for the issuance of SPECI (see 2.4.2.1).

Local special reports in respect of RVR, surface wind or other elements need not be issued if the local ATS unit(s) has (have) displays for these elements corresponding to the displays in the aeronautical meteorological station, or if changes in RVR are continuously reported to the ATS unit by an observer at the aerodrome.

2.4.1.2 Local special reports carry the identifier SPECIAL and, as Example 2-2 shows, have the same content and sequence of elements as local routine reports (see 2.3.4 to 2.3.16). As with local routine reports, a trend forecast is appended, as required, to the local special report.

## 2.4.2 Aerodrome special meteorological report (SPECI)

2.4.2.1 SPECI are issued in accordance with the following criteria:

- a) when the mean surface wind direction has changed by 60° or more from that given in the latest report, the mean speed before and/or after the change being 5 m/s (or 10 kt) or more;
- b) when the mean surface wind speed has changed by 5 m/s (or 10 kt) or more from that given in the latest report;
- c) when the variation from the mean surface wind speed (gusts) has changed by 5 m/s (10 kt) or more from that given in the latest report, the mean speed before and/or after the change being 7.5 m/s (15 kt) or more;
- d) when the wind changes through values of operational significance. The threshold values should be established by the meteorological authority in consultation with the appropriate ATS authority and operators concerned, taking into account changes in the wind which would:
  - 1) require a change in runway(s) in use; or
  - 2) indicate that the runway tailwind and crosswind components have changed through values representing the main operating limits for typical aircraft operating at the aerodrome;
- e) when the visibility is improving and changes to, or passes through, one or more of the following values; or when the visibility is deteriorating and passes through one or more of the following values:
  - 1) 800, 1 500 or 3 000 m; and
  - 2) 5 000 m, in cases where significant numbers of flights are operated in accordance with visual flight rules;

*Note.— In local special reports, visibility refers to the value(s) to be reported in accordance with 2.3.10.5. In SPECI, visibility refers to the value(s) to be reported in accordance with 2.3.10.7 and 2.3.10.8.*
- f) when RVR is improving and changes to, or passes through, one or more of the following values; or when RVR is deteriorating and passes through one or more of the following values:

50, 175, 300, 550 or 800 m;
- g) when the onset, cessation or change in intensity of any of the following weather phenomena or combinations thereof occurs:
  - 1) freezing precipitation
  - 2) moderate or heavy precipitation (including showers thereof)
  - 3) thunderstorm (with precipitation)
  - 4) duststorm
  - 5) sandstorm

- 6) funnel cloud (tornado or waterspout);
- h) when the onset or cessation of any of the following weather phenomena or combinations thereof occurs:
  - 1) freezing fog
  - 2) low drifting dust, sand or snow
  - 3) blowing dust, sand or snow
  - 4) thunderstorm (without precipitation)
  - 5) squall;
- i) when the height of the base of the lowest cloud layer of BKN or OVC extent is lifting and changes to, or passes through, one or more of the following values; or when the height of the base of the lowest cloud layer of BKN or OVC extent is descending and passes through one or more of the following values:
  - 1) 30, 60, 150 or 300 m (100, 200, 500 or 1 000 ft);
  - 2) 450 m (1 500 ft), in cases where significant numbers of flights are operated in accordance with visual flight rules;
- j) when the amount of a cloud layer below 450 m (1 500 ft) changes:
  - 1) from SCT or less to BKN or OVC; or
  - 2) from BKN or OVC to SCT or less;
- k) when the sky is obscured and the vertical visibility is improving and changes to, or passes through, one or more of the following values; or when the sky is obscured and the vertical visibility is deteriorating and passes through one or more of the following values:

30, 60, 150 or 300 m (100, 200, 500 or 1 000 ft); and
- l) any other criteria based on local aerodrome operating minima, as agreed between the meteorological authority, the appropriate ATS authority and the operators concerned.

*Note.— Other criteria based on local operating minima are to be considered in parallel with similar criteria for the inclusion of change groups and for the amendment of aerodrome forecasts (TAF).*

2.4.2.2 When a deterioration of a weather element is accompanied by an improvement in another element, a single SPECI shall be issued; it shall then be treated as a deterioration report.

2.4.2.3 SPECI carry the identifier SPECI and, as Example 2-2 shows, have the same content and sequence of elements as METAR (see 2.3.4 to 2.3.16). As with METAR, a trend forecast is appended, as required, to SPECI.

2.4.2.4 SPECI are disseminated beyond the aerodrome of origin to other aerodromes in accordance with regional air navigation agreement, which ensures, *inter alia*, that SPECI are available for VOLMET broadcasts, for D-VOLMET and for individual transmissions to aircraft in flight through ATS units or operators.

*Note.— Details on requirements for the exchange of SPECI between meteorological offices/stations can be found in the relevant ANP, Volume II.*

## 2.5 REPORTS OF VOLCANIC ACTIVITY

2.5.1 As mentioned in 1.4.2, meteorological stations located in the vicinity of active or potentially active volcanoes are required to make observations of volcanic activity. The volcanic activity reports resulting from these observations should contain:

- a) message type VOLCANIC ACTIVITY REPORT;
- b) station identifier, location indicator or name of the station;
- c) date/time of the message;
- d) location of volcano, and name, if known; and
- e) concise description of the event including, as appropriate, the level of intensity of the volcanic activity, including significant pre-eruption volcanic activity, occurrence of the eruption and its date and time, and the existence of a volcanic ash cloud in the area together with the direction of the ash cloud movement and height.

*Note.— Pre-eruption volcanic activity in this context means unusual and/or increasing volcanic activity which could presage a volcanic eruption.*

2.5.2 The reports should be issued in abbreviated plain language and disseminated, as a matter of urgency, to the associated meteorological watch offices, ATS units and aeronautical information services units. These reports are important for the operation of the IAVW.

## 2.6 BASIC METEOROLOGICAL DATA

### 2.6.1 Weather radar observations

2.6.1.1 Weather radar observations permit the locating and tracking of thunderstorms and tropical cyclones, and the evaluation of precipitation and cloud height. This information is used for early warning of certain meteorological phenomena hazardous to aviation, particularly in the vicinity of aerodromes, and in the preparation of trend forecasts. Radar data are usually available only locally, but in many parts of the world, data from large radar networks are distributed in coded or pictorial forms and, in particular, in digital form, to meteorological offices/stations and other aeronautical users by means of various data processing systems and high-speed communication channels. The processed and integrated weather radar information is often displayed for ATS personnel through ATS systems.

2.6.1.2 Increasing use is being made of Doppler weather radar both for storm warning purposes and, specifically, to detect low-level wind shear. In the latter case, fully automated terminal Doppler weather radar is available, which can provide wind shear warnings to air traffic control and directly to aircraft equipped with an air-ground data link.

### 2.6.2 Automated aircraft observations and air-reports

Automated meteorological reports from aircraft constitute an important source of upper-air data. They are especially useful in areas where ground-based observations are sparse or not available. Air-reporting is also useful in the observation of volcanic ash, wind shear and turbulence. A substantial proportion of upper-air wind and temperature information is obtained through the WMO aircraft meteorological data relay (AMDAR) programme based on the use of standard equipment carried on board most aircraft. All these data are disseminated in code forms established by WMO and are used for the preparation of upper-air forecasts. In view of its importance, air-reporting is discussed further in Chapter 7.

### 2.6.3 Basic surface and upper-air observations

2.6.3.1 Meteorological observations containing elements similar to those in aerodrome reports, but with additional details of cloud, weather, pressure, etc., are made at many aerodromes and other locations (including ships) for basic meteorological purposes. They are made at three-hour or six-hour intervals (0000 UTC, 0300 UTC, 0600 UTC, etc.), disseminated in a code form (SYNOP) established by WMO, and used, *inter alia*, for the calculations involved in numerical weather prediction.

2.6.3.2 Upper-air information is obtained principally from instruments carried aloft by balloons released from fixed ground observation sites or from ships. These balloon-borne instruments reach altitudes approaching 30 km (100 000 ft) and provide data on wind speed and direction, temperature, pressure and relative humidity to approximately 15 km (50 000 ft). Upper-air observations of this type are made at standard hours, 0000 UTC and 1200 UTC and additionally in some areas at 0600 UTC and 1800 UTC.

### 2.6.4 Meteorological satellite data

In addition to information on cloud type, cloud amount and height of cloud tops, meteorological satellite data also provide information on vertical temperature and humidity distribution and on upper winds derived from cloud movement and, increasingly, are used to detect volcanic ash. The information provided by satellites is of particular importance in areas where ground-based observations are sparse or not available. It is received directly from geostationary or polar-orbiting satellites by ground-receiving equipment. The processed satellite data can be used to supplement the integrated weather radar data. Data from geostationary and polar-orbiting meteorological satellites are also used by volcanic ash advisory centres for the detection and tracking of volcanic ash clouds.

---



# Chapter 3

## FORECASTS

### 3.1 GENERAL

A forecast is a concise statement of expected meteorological conditions at an aerodrome or over an area or along a route. Owing to the variability of meteorological elements in space and time, the limitation of forecasting techniques, and the limitations imposed by the definitions of some of the individual meteorological elements (e.g. surface wind, weather phenomena), the specific value of any forecast element is to be understood as being the most probable value which the element is likely to assume during the period of the forecast. Similarly, when the time of occurrence or change of an element is given in a forecast, this is to be understood to be the most probable time.

### 3.2 ACCURACY OF AERONAUTICAL METEOROLOGICAL FORECASTS

The accuracy of aeronautical forecasts depends upon the accuracy, spacing and frequency of observations, the period of the forecast and various factors associated with analysis and forecasting techniques. In general, the forecast elements are the best estimate of the conditions expected to occur within a range of values. Guidance on the operationally desirable accuracy of aeronautical forecasts is contained in Annex 3, Attachment B.

### 3.3 TYPES OF AERONAUTICAL METEOROLOGICAL FORECASTS

3.3.1 There are different types of aeronautical forecasts designed to meet requirements for the various stages of flight planning. They differ in respect of area or airspace covered and in respect of the offices preparing and issuing them, as shown in Table 3-1.

*Note.— While forecasts generally refer to the meteorological conditions expected to occur (i.e. in the future), SIGMET and AIRMET information, aerodrome warnings and wind shear warnings may refer to existing as well as expected conditions. (For further details on SIGMET and AIRMET information, aerodrome warnings and wind shear warnings, see Chapter 4.) Similarly, volcanic ash advisories containing information concerning location, extent and trajectories of volcanic ash clouds; tropical cyclone advisories containing information concerning tropical cyclones and the movement of their centres and space weather advisories containing information concerning space weather effects can also be considered forecasts. Details concerning the advisories are given in Chapter 4.*

3.3.2 The various formats in which forecasts are normally issued (abbreviated plain language, code or graphical) are listed in Table 3-2.

3.3.3 Forecasts also differ in regard to the period of validity or fixed time of validity for which they are normally prepared, as shown in Table 3-3.

**Table 3-1. Types of aeronautical meteorological forecasts, including SIGMET and AIRMET information, warnings, volcanic ash advisories, tropical cyclone advisories and space weather advisories**

<i>Type of forecast</i>	<i>Area/airspace covered</i>	<i>Stage of flight planning</i>	<i>Responsibility for preparing/issuing the forecast</i>
TAF	Aerodrome	Pre-flight and in-flight	Aerodrome meteorological office
Landing forecast (trend)	Aerodrome	In-flight	Aerodrome meteorological office
Take-off forecast	Runway complex	Pre-flight	Aerodrome meteorological office
Forecasts of en-route conditions	Route(s), an area or flight levels applicable to the operation	Pre-flight and in-flight	World area forecast centre (WAFC) (Aerodrome meteorological office for low-level flights)
SIGMET information	Flight information region (FIR) or control area (CTA)/ encompassing all flight levels used for flight operations	Pre-flight and in-flight	Meteorological watch office (MWO)
AIRMET information	FIR or CTA or a sub-area thereof/encompassing all flight levels up to FL 100 (FL 150 or higher in mountainous areas)	Pre-flight and in-flight	MWO
Aerodrome warnings	Aerodrome surface conditions	Not applicable (intended for parked aircraft, aerodrome installations)	Aerodrome meteorological office
Wind shear warnings	Aerodrome and approach/take-off paths between runway level and 500 m (1 600 ft), or higher, if necessary	In-flight	Aerodrome meteorological office
Volcanic ash advisories	Area affected by volcanic ash cloud	Pre-flight and in-flight	Volcanic ash advisory centre (VAAC)
Tropical cyclone advisories	Area affected by tropical cyclone	Pre-flight and in-flight	Tropical cyclone advisory centre (TCAC)
Space weather advisories	Area affected by space weather phenomena	Pre-flight and in-flight	Space weather centre (SWXC)



**Table 3-2. Formats of forecasts, including SIGMET and AIRMET information, warnings, volcanic ash advisories, tropical cyclone advisories and space weather advisories**

<i>Type of forecast</i>	<i>Abbreviated plain language</i>	<i>Alpha-numeric code form</i>	<i>Binary code form<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>IWXXM GML form<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>Graphical format</i>
TAF		X		X	
Trend forecasts	X	X <sup>3</sup>		X	
Take-off forecasts	X				
Forecasts of en-route conditions	X		X	X <sup>8</sup>	X <sup>4</sup>
SIGMET information	X <sup>5</sup>			X	X <sup>7</sup>
AIRMET information	X <sup>5</sup>			X	
Aerodrome warnings	X <sup>5</sup>				
Wind shear warnings	X <sup>5</sup>				
Volcanic ash advisories	X <sup>5</sup>			X	X <sup>6</sup>
Tropical cyclone advisories	X <sup>5</sup>			X	X <sup>6</sup>
Space weather advisories	X <sup>5</sup>			X	

1. BUFR and GRIB code forms for WAFS forecasts.
2. IWXXM GML form.
3. Part of the METAR code form.
4. Chart form for area forecasts for low-level flights.
5. See Chapter 4.
6. Portable network graphic (PNG) format.
7. Format not specified in Annex 3.
8. IWXXM GML form for WAFS significant weather forecasts.

### 3.4 AERODROME FORECASTS (TAF)

3.4.1 TAF follow the general form of an aerodrome routine meteorological report (METAR), consisting of a concise statement of the expected meteorological conditions at an aerodrome for a specified period. They include surface wind, visibility, weather phenomena and cloud, and relevant significant changes thereto (see Example 3-1). Forecasts of weather phenomena are for the area at the aerodrome, i.e. the area within a radius of approximately 8 km of the aerodrome reference point. The word “approximately” is used to cater for aerodromes that have perimeters which are not precisely a radius of 8 km from the aerodrome reference point. Forecasts of cloud are for the aerodrome and its vicinity, i.e. the area within a radius of approximately 16 km of the aerodrome reference point. Forecasts of maximum and minimum

temperatures are included in accordance with regional air navigation agreement. Detailed technical specifications for TAF can be found in Annex 3, Appendix 5, Table A5-1, which also includes an extensive set of examples relating to individual portions of TAF in alphanumeric format. TAF valid for less than 12 hours are issued every 3 hours and those valid for 12 hours or more are issued at 6-hour intervals. The validity period of TAF is determined for each region in accordance with regional air navigation agreement but must be between 6 and 30 hours inclusive. When issuing TAF, aerodrome meteorological offices must ensure that only one TAF is valid at an aerodrome at any given time. TAF must be issued at a specified time not earlier than one hour prior to the beginning of its validity period.

3.4.2 TAF should be kept under continuous review by the aerodrome meteorological office concerned to enable the issuance of amendments as necessary. Annex 3 does not explicitly require that complete METAR be available to maintain such a review (although many States do stipulate in their national regulations that METAR be required for this purpose). It is recommended that other sources of meteorological information be used in the absence of full METAR (weather radar data, observations from automatic weather stations, satellite images, etc.). TAF that cannot be kept under continuous review must be cancelled. The issuance of a new TAF by an aerodrome meteorological office is understood to automatically supersede any TAF previously issued for the same place and for the same period of validity or part thereof.

#### Example 3-1. TAF

*TAF:*

TAF YUDO 152300Z 13001706 13005MPS 9000 BKN020 BECMG 16061608 SCT015CB BKN020 TEMPO 16081612 17007G12MPS 1000 TSRA SCT010CB BKN020 FM161230 15004MPS 9999 BKN020 TX25/1612Z TNM02/1623Z

*Meaning of forecast:*

TAF for Donlon/International\* issued on the 15th of the month at 2300 UTC valid from 0000 UTC on the 16th of the month to 0600 UTC on the 17th of the month; surface wind direction 130 degrees; wind speed 5 metres per second; visibility 9 kilometres; broken cloud at 600 metres (2 000 feet); becoming between 0600 UTC and 0800 UTC on the 16th of the month, scattered cumulonimbus cloud at 450 metres (1 500 feet) and broken cloud at 600 metres (2 000 feet); temporarily between 0800 UTC and 1200 UTC on the 16th of the month; surface wind direction 170 degrees, wind speed 7 metres per second (14 kt) gusting to 12 metres per second (24 kt); visibility 1 000 metres in a thunderstorm with moderate rain, scattered cumulonimbus cloud at 300 metres (1 000 feet) and broken cloud at 600 metres; from 1230 UTC on the 16th of the month; surface wind direction 150 degrees, wind speed 4 metres per second; visibility 10 kilometres or more; broken cloud at 600 metres (2 000 feet); maximum air temperature 25 degrees Celsius at 1200 UTC on the 16th of the month;\*\* minimum air temperature minus 2 degrees Celsius at 2300 UTC on the 16th of the month.\*\*

\* Fictitious location.

\*\* Inclusion of temperature forecasts (maximum and minimum expected to occur during the TAF validity period and their corresponding times of occurrence) is in accordance with regional air navigation agreement.

3.4.3 The specific values of elements and the time of expected changes indicated in TAF are understood as being approximate and as representing the most probable mean of a range of values or times. Criteria for giving expected changes, or for amending TAF, are based on values given in Table 3-4.

3.4.4 The expected changes referred to in 3.4.3 are given using the following indicators and associated time groups:

- a) *BECMG* (abbreviation for “becoming”) — this change indicator describes changes where the conditions are expected to reach or pass specified values at a regular or irregular rate;
- b) *TEMPO* (abbreviation for “temporary”) — this indicator is used to describe temporary fluctuations in the meteorological conditions, lasting less than one hour in each instance and, in the aggregate, covering less than half of the forecast period. For forecast changes in excess of these criteria, the change group “BECMG” should be used;
- c) *PROB* (abbreviation for “probability”) — followed by a percentage (rounded to the nearest ten) indicates the probability that a certain change or value will occur. Only PROB30 or PROB40 are used, as less than 30 per cent probability is considered in aviation to have little operational significance and 50 per cent or more should be indicated as BECMG or TEMPO, as appropriate; and
- d) *FM* (abbreviation for “from”) — is used to indicate self-contained time periods within the overall validity period during which certain conditions prevail.

A full description of the usage of the above indicators is given in Annex 3, Appendix 5, 1.3. It should be noted that the number of change indicators used should be kept to a minimum and should not exceed five groups.

3.4.5 TAF (and amendments thereto) for intended destinations and alternates will normally be supplied by aerodrome meteorological offices upon appropriate notification by operators. All TAF issued are to be disseminated to international OPMET databanks and centres designated by regional air navigation agreement for the operation of the aeronautical fixed service (AFS) Internet-based services for onward dissemination to States.

*Note.— Information on regional differences in period of validity of TAF, and on requirements for their exchange between aerodrome meteorological offices, can be found in the relevant electronic regional air navigation plan (eANP), Volume II, Part V, Table MET II-2.*

3.4.6 An amended TAF is identified as “TAF AMD” in place of “TAF”; it covers the whole of the remaining period of the original forecast. (For amendment criteria, see 3.4.3 and Table 3-4; an example is provided in Example 3-2). A TAF is amended as a result of changes to the forecast or current meteorological conditions leading to the original TAF no longer accurately reflecting the expected meteorological situation. A TAF can also be issued as a corrected TAF using TAF COR which indicates that the original TAF contained errors in terms of syntax and that the correction is merely to correct this rather than any change in the meteorological conditions.

3.4.7 A TAF is cancelled using CNL if the TAF cannot be kept under continuous review or is no longer valid owing to the closure of the aerodrome. If a TAF is not available for a particular aerodrome, it is identified with the abbreviation NIL within a bulletin that may contain TAF for several aerodromes.

3.4.8 The TAF code form was developed by the World Meteorological Organization (WMO) on the basis of aeronautical requirements established by ICAO. This code uses the approved ICAO abbreviations contained in the *Procedures for Air Navigation Services — ICAO Abbreviations and Codes* (PANS-ABC, Doc 8400). In view of this, TAF in alphanumeric format are human-readable.

*Note.— All details relating to the TAF code forms in alphanumeric format are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.1, Part A — Alphanumeric Codes.*

3.4.9 Additionally, TAF are to be disseminated in IWXXM GML form, which are only machine-readable.

*Note 1.— The technical specifications for IWXXM are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.3, Part D — Representation Derived from Data Models. Guidance on the implementation of IWXXM is provided in the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (Doc 10003).*

*Note 2.— Geography markup language (GML) is an encoding standard of the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC).*

**Example 3-2. Cancellation of TAF**

*Cancellation of TAF:*

TAF AMD YUDO 161500Z 16001706 CNL

*Meaning of the message:*

Amended TAF for Donlon/International\* issued on the 16th of the month at 1500 UTC cancelling the previously issued TAF valid from 0000 on the 16th of the month to 0600 UTC on the 17th of the month.

\* Fictitious location

**Table 3-3. Validity of forecasts, including SIGMET and AIRMET information, warnings, volcanic ash advisories, tropical cyclone advisories and space weather advisories**

<i>Forecast</i>	<i>Usual validity period or fixed time of validity</i>
TAF	Between 6 and 30 hours inclusive
Trend forecasts	2 hours
Take-off forecasts	For specified period (usually short)
Forecasts of en-route conditions	<i>In chart and binary code forms, and in IWXXM GML form: up to 36 hours for fixed validity times, usually 0000, 0300, 0600, 0900, 1200, 1500, 1800 and 2100 UTC*</i>
SIGMET information	Not more than 4 hours
SIGMET information for volcanic ash and tropical cyclones	6 hours
AIRMET information	Not more than 4 hours
Aerodrome warnings	Usually not more than 24 hours
Wind shear warnings	For as long as wind shear is expected to last
Volcanic ash advisories	18 hours
Tropical cyclone advisories	24 hours
Space weather advisories	24 hours

\* All the forecasts issued within WAFCS are issued for fixed validity times of 0000, 0300, 0600, 0900, 1200, 1500, 1800 and 2100 UTC. These forecasts should be used as follows:

<i>Validity time (UTC)</i>	<i>Period for use (UTC)</i>
0000	2230–0130
0300	0130–0430
0600	0430–0730
0900	0730–1030
1200	1030–1330
1500	1330–1630
1800	1630–1930
2100	1930–2230

**Table 3-4. Criteria for the indication of changes and/or preparation of amendments to TAF**

<i>Meteorological element</i>	<i>Criteria for the inclusion of change groups or for the amendment of TAF</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Surface wind	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— When the mean surface wind direction is forecast to change by 60 degrees or more, the mean speed before and/or after the change being 5 m/s (10 kt) or more;</li> <li>— When the mean surface wind speed is forecast to change by 5 m/s (10 kt) or more;</li> <li>— When the variation from the mean surface wind speed (gusts) is forecast to change by 5 m/s (10 kt) or more, the mean speed before and/or after the change being 7.5 m/s (15 kt) or more;</li> <li>— When the surface wind is forecast to change through values of operational significance, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• changes that require changes in the runway(s) in use; and</li> <li>• changes in runway tailwind/crosswind component through values representative of operating limits of typical aircraft using the aerodrome.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Threshold values to be established by the meteorological authority in consultation with the appropriate air traffic services (ATS) authority and operators concerned.
Visibility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— When the visibility is forecast to improve and change to, or pass through, one or more of the following values; or</li> <li>— When the visibility is forecast to deteriorate and pass through one or more of the following values:  150, 350, 600, 800, 1 500 or 3 000 m.</li> </ul>	At aerodromes with a significant number of visual flight rules (VFR) flights, the value of 5 000 m is also included in the criteria.
Weather	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— When any of the following weather phenomena or combinations thereof are forecast to begin or end or change in intensity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• freezing fog</li> <li>• freezing precipitation</li> <li>• moderate or heavy precipitation (including showers)</li> <li>• duststorm</li> <li>• sandstorm</li> <li>• thunderstorm.</li> </ul> </li> <li>— When any of the following weather phenomena are forecast to begin or end:</li> </ul>	

<i>Meteorological element</i>	<i>Criteria for the inclusion of change groups or for the amendment of TAF</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• low drifting dust, sand or snow</li> <li>• blowing dust, sand or snow</li> <li>• squall</li> <li>• funnel cloud (tornado or waterspout).</li> </ul>	
Cloud	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— When the height of base of the lowest layer or mass of cloud of BKN or OVC extent is forecast to lift and change to, or pass through, one or more of the following values; or</li> <li>— When the height of base of the lowest layer or mass of cloud of BKN or OVC extent is forecast to lower and pass through one or more of the following values:  30, 60, 150 or 300 m (100, 200, 500 or 1 000 ft).</li> <li>— When the amount of a layer or mass of cloud below 450 m (1 500 ft) is forecast to change: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• from NSC, FEW or SCT to BKN or OVC; or</li> <li>• from BKN or OVC to NSC, FEW or SCT.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	At aerodromes with a significant number of VFR flights, the height of cloud base of 450 m (1 500 ft) is also included in the criteria.
Vertical visibility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— When the vertical visibility is forecast to improve and change to, or pass through, one or more of the following values; or</li> <li>— When the vertical visibility is forecast to deteriorate and pass through one or more of the following values:  30, 60, 150 or 300 m (100, 200, 500 or 1 000 ft).</li> </ul>	
Temperature	None.	
Other	Other criteria based on local aerodrome operating minima.	As agreed between the MET authority and the operators concerned to be considered in parallel with similar criteria for the issuance of SPECI.

### 3.5 TREND FORECASTS

3.5.1 In most ICAO regions, landing forecasts are supplied. They are prepared in the form of trend forecasts which consist of a concise statement indicating any significant changes expected to occur during the next two hours in one or more of the following meteorological elements: surface wind, visibility, weather phenomena and cloud (see Example 3-3). The trend forecast is always appended to a local routine report or a local special report, or METAR or SPECI. Forecasts of weather phenomena are for the area at the aerodrome, i.e. the area within a radius of approximately 8 km of the aerodrome reference point. The word “approximately” is used to cater for aerodromes that have perimeters which are not precisely a radius of 8 km from the aerodrome reference point. Forecasts of cloud are for the aerodrome and its vicinity, i.e. the area within a radius of approximately 16 km of the aerodrome reference point. Detailed technical specifications concerning trend forecasts can be found in Annex 3, Appendix 3, Tables A3-1 and A3-2.

*Note.— The aerodromes for which trend forecasts are to be prepared are indicated in the relevant electronic regional air navigation plan (eANP), Volume II.*

3.5.2 The trend forecast appended to the report has the same order of elements (i.e. surface wind, visibility, weather phenomena and cloud), terminology, units and scales as the preceding report and is introduced by one of the following change indicators if a significant change or changes is or are expected:

- a) BECMG; or
- b) TEMPO.

These change indicators are used as necessary in association with the abbreviations “FM” (meaning “from”), “TL” (meaning “until”) and “AT” (dictionary meaning), each followed by a time group in hours and minutes. “FM” and “TL” are used with both “BECMG” and “TEMPO” to specify periods during which the relevant changes are expected to occur. “AT” is used with “BECMG” to indicate that a change is expected to occur at a specified time. When a change is expected to take place throughout the two-hour validity period of the trend forecast, the time period is not given. Similarly, if a change is expected to occur but the time is uncertain, the indicators “BECMG” and “TEMPO” are used alone. A full description of the usage of these indicators is given in Annex 3, Appendix 5, 2.3.



**Example 3-3. Trend forecasts appended to a local routine  
and special report and to METAR and SPECI**

a) Routine reports with trend

*Local routine report with a trend forecast:*

MET REPORT YUDO\* 221630Z WIND 240/5MPS VIS 600M RVR RWY 12 1000M MOD DZ FG CLD SCT 300M  
OVC 600M T17 DP16 QNH 1018HPA TREND BECMG TL1700 VIS 800M FG BECMG AT 1800 VIS 10KM NSW

*METAR with a trend forecast:*

METAR YUDO\* 221630Z 24004MPS 0800 R12/1000U DZ FG SCT010 OVC020 17/16 Q1018 BECMG TL1700  
0900 FG BECMG AT1800 9999 NSW

*Meaning of both reports with trend:*

Routine report for Donlon/International\* issued on the 22nd of the month at 1630 UTC; surface wind direction 240 degrees; wind speed 5 or 4 metres per second (10 or 8 kt) (averaged over 2 and 10 minutes, respectively); visibility 600 metres (along the runway(s) in the local routine report); prevailing visibility 800 metres (in METAR); runway visual range representative of the touchdown zone for runway 12 is 1 000 metres (averaged over 1 and 10 minutes, respectively); runway visual range values have shown a distinct upward tendency during the previous 10 minutes (RVR tendency to be included in METAR only); moderate drizzle and fog; scattered cloud at 300 metres; overcast at 600 metres (2 000 feet); air temperature 17 degrees Celsius; dew point temperature 16 degrees Celsius; QNH 1 018 hectopascals; trend during next two hours; visibility becoming 800 metres (along runway(s) in the local report) and prevailing visibility 900 feet (in METAR) in fog by 1700 UTC; at 1800 UTC visibility becoming 10 kilometres or more (along the runway(s) in the local routine report); prevailing visibility (in METAR); nil significant weather.

b) Special reports with trend

*Local special report with a trend forecast:*

SPECIAL YUDO\* 151115Z WIND 050/26KT MAX37 MNM10 VIS 1200M HVY TSRA CLD BKN CB 500FT T25 DP22  
QNH 1008HPA TREND TEMPO TL1200 VIS 600M BECMG AT1200 VIS 8 KM NSW NSC

*SPECI with a trend forecast:*

SPECI YUDO\* 151115Z 05025G37KT 3000 1200NE +TSRA BKN005CB 25/22 Q1008 TEMPO TL1200 0600  
BECMG AT1200 8000 NSW NSC

*Meaning of both reports with trend:*

Special report for Donlon/International\* issued on the 15th of the month at 1115 UTC; surface wind direction 050 degrees; wind speed 26 and 25 knots (averaged over 2 and 10 minutes, respectively), gusting between 10 and 37 knots (for SPECI "gusting to 37 knots", minimum not to be included); visibility along the runway(s) 1 200 metres (in the local special report); prevailing visibility 3 000 m (in SPECI) with minimum visibility 1 200 metres to north east (directional variations to be included in SPECI only); thunderstorm with heavy rain; broken cumulonimbus cloud at 500 feet; air temperature 25 degrees Celsius; dew point temperature 22 degrees Celsius; QNH 1 008 hectopascals; trend during next two hours; visibility temporarily 600 metres (along the runway(s) in the local special report; prevailing visibility in SPECI) from 1115 to 1200 UTC; becoming at 1200 UTC visibility 8 kilometres (along the runway(s) in the local special report); prevailing visibility (in SPECI), thunderstorm ceases; and nil significant weather, nil significant cloud.

\* Fictitious location.

3.5.3 When no significant changes to any of the elements concerned (surface wind, visibility, weather phenomena, cloud and any other elements as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned) are expected within two hours, the term NOSIG is used, representing the complete forecast statement. Criteria for significant changes are detailed in Annex 3, Appendix 5, 2.2.2 to 2.2.7. They can be summarized as follows:

- a) a change in the mean wind direction of 60 degrees or more, the mean speed before and/or after the change being 5 m/s (10 kt) or more;
- b) a change in mean surface wind speed of 5 m/s (10 kt) or more;
- c) wind changes through values of operational significance, i.e.:
  - 1) that require a change in the runway(s) in use; or
  - 2) that result in a runway tailwind and crosswind component passing through values representing the main operating limits of typical aircraft operating at the aerodrome;

**Example.—** A surface wind of 270 degrees at 13 m/s (26 kt) is reported.

An expected temporary surface wind of 250 degrees at 18 m/s (36 kt) with maximum speeds (gusts) to 25 m/s (50 kt) throughout the period is indicated in the form “TEMPO 250/18MPS MAX25” (“TEMPO 250/36KT MAX50”) (local reports) or “TEMPO 25018G25MPS” (“TEMPO 25036G50KT”) (METAR/SPECI).

- d) when the visibility is forecast to improve and change to, or pass through, one or more of the following values; or when the visibility is forecast to deteriorate and pass through one or more of the following values: 150, 350, 600, 800, 1 500 or 3 000 m, and 5 000 m where many flights are conducted in accordance with visual flight rules;

*Note.—* Forecasts of runway visual range are not yet regarded as being feasible.

**Example.—** A visibility of 1 200 metres is reported.

A temporary reduction of the visibility to 700 m (for example in fog) is indicated in the form “TEMPO VIS 700M” (local reports) or “TEMPO 0700” (METAR/SPECI).

- e) expected onset, cessation or change in intensity of the following weather phenomena or combinations thereof:
  - 1) freezing precipitation
  - 2) moderate or heavy precipitation (including showers)
  - 3) thunderstorm (with precipitation)
  - 4) duststorm
  - 5) sandstorm

- 6) other weather phenomena given in Table 2-6 as agreed between the meteorological authority, the ATS authority and operators concerned.

The expected end of occurrence of the weather phenomena is indicated by the abbreviation “NSW”.

**Example.—** *No present weather is reported.*

Temporary moderate freezing rain is expected between 0300 and 0430 UTC; this is indicated in the form “TEMPO FM0300 TL0430 MOD FZRA” (local reports) and “TEMPO FM0300 TL0430 FZRA” (METAR/SPECI).

- f) expected onset or cessation of one or more of one of the following weather phenomena or combinations thereof:
  - 1) freezing fog
  - 2) low drifting dust, sand or snow
  - 3) blowing dust, sand or snow
  - 4) thunderstorms (without precipitation)
  - 5) squall
  - 6) funnel cloud (tornado or waterspout);

*Note.— A maximum of three phenomena are to be reported in accordance with e) and f) above.*

**Example.—** *Thunderstorm without rain is reported.*

An expected cessation at 1630 UTC of the present weather, such as a thunderstorm, is indicated in the form “BECMG AT1630 NSW” (in both local reports and METAR/SPECI).

- g) changes in cloud height when the height of base of the lowest layer or mass of cloud of BKN or OVC extent is forecast to lift and change to, or pass through, one or more of the following values; or when the height of base of the lowest layer or mass of cloud of BKN or OVC extent is forecast to lower and pass through one or more of the following values:

30, 60, 150, 300 or 450 m (100, 200, 500, 1 000 or 1 500 ft);
- h) changes in cloud amount from “NSC, FEW, or SCT” to “BKN or OVC” or from “BKN or OVC” to “NSC, FEW or SCT” when the height of the base of a layer is below, falls below or rises above 450 m (1 500 ft);

*Note.— When no clouds of operational significance are forecast, and “CAVOK” is not appropriate, the abbreviation “NSC” is used.*

**Example.**— *Scattered clouds with the height of base at 300 m (1 000 ft) are reported.*

A forecast rapid increase in cloud at 1130 UTC from SCT to OVC at 300 m (1 000 ft) is indicated in the form “BECMG AT1130 OVC 300M” (local reports) or “BECMG AT1130 OVC010” (METAR/SPECI).

- i) at aerodromes where vertical visibility observations are available when the vertical visibility is forecast to improve and change to, or pass through, one or more of the following values; or when the vertical visibility is forecast to deteriorate and pass through one or more of the following values:

30, 60, 150 or 300 m (100, 200, 500 or 1 000 ft).

A tabular presentation of the criteria for trend forecasts is given in Appendix D.

3.5.4 In addition to the criteria specified in 3.5.3, other criteria based on local aerodrome operating minima may be established as a result of an agreement between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned.

3.5.5 As trend forecasts are intended to be of particular usefulness to pilots in deciding whether to commence/continue a flight towards the aerodrome of destination or to hold/divert, it is important that the operationally significant criteria for those forecasts are strictly followed. In order to ensure the desirable accuracy of these short-period forecasts, use needs to be made of all available aids, in particular, ground-based weather radar and automatic or manned observation sites in the vicinity of the aerodrome (particularly in the direction from which weather, such as advection fog, is known to approach the aerodrome). If trend forecasts are made at locations some distance from the aerodrome concerned, it is essential that arrangements be made to provide the forecaster with up-to-date information on meteorological conditions at the aerodrome.

### 3.6 FORECASTS FOR TAKE-OFF

If required as agreed between the meteorological authority and operators concerned, a forecast for take-off must be prepared by the aerodrome meteorological office, containing information on expected conditions over the runway complex in regard to surface wind and wind variations, temperature, pressure (QNH) and other elements, as agreed locally. It is supplied by the aerodrome meteorological office on request to operators or flight crew members within the three hours before the expected time of departure. The order of the elements and the terminology, units and scales used in forecasts for take-off are the same as those used in reports for the same aerodrome; the format of the forecast is subject to agreement between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned. Aerodrome meteorological offices preparing forecasts for take-off should keep these forecasts under continuous review and issue necessary amendments promptly. The criteria for the issuance of amendments to forecast elements are to be agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned. These criteria should be consistent with the corresponding criteria for local special reports established for the aerodrome in accordance with 2.4.1.

### 3.7 FORECASTS OF EN-ROUTE CONDITIONS

#### 3.7.1 General

While forecasts for the aerodrome generally continue to be prepared by aerodrome meteorological offices, all forecasts of

en-route conditions are provided within the framework of the world area forecast system (WAFS) by the two WAFCs except for forecasts of en-route conditions for low-level flights which are prepared locally or regionally by aerodrome meteorological offices or meteorological watch offices.

*Note.— Further details on the WAFS are given in Appendix A.*

### 3.7.2 WAFS upper-air forecasts

3.7.2.1 Upper-air forecasts are received from WAFCs in gridded form and supplied to users in gridded or chart form. Wind and temperature data selected from the global forecasts should be depicted on the upper wind and upper-air temperature charts in a sufficiently dense latitude/longitude grid. On the charts, the wind direction is shown by arrows with a number of feathers or shaded pennants to indicate the wind speed, and temperatures are given in degrees Celsius as thus:



*Note.— Negative temperatures are indicated without sign, but positive temperatures are shown with a preceding “+” sign.*

Wind and temperature information is given for points on a grid sufficiently dense to provide meaningful information. On computer-drawn charts, wind arrows normally take precedence over temperatures, and temperatures take precedence over the chart background.

*Note.— Examples of forecast charts of upper wind and upper-air temperatures are included in Annex 3, Appendix 1.*

3.7.2.2 The forecasts of:

- a) upper wind;
- b) upper-air temperature;
- c) flight level and temperature of tropopause;
- d) direction, speed and flight level of maximum wind;
- e) geopotential altitude of flight levels; and
- f) upper-air humidity

prepared in gridded form four times daily by WAFCs are valid for 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, 21, 24, 27, 30, 33 and 36 hours after the time (0000, 0600, 1200 and 1800 UTC) of the synoptic data on which they are based. The forecasts should be available

for the transmission from WAFCs to users no later than six hours after the respective standard time of observation. Table 3-5 shows the flight levels for which the upper wind and upper-air temperature forecasts are prepared, together with the corresponding geopotential altitudes and fixed pressure levels.

**Table 3-5. Flight levels of upper wind and upper-air temperature forecasts, and their corresponding geopotential altitude in feet (ft), and fixed pressure levels in hectopascal (hPa)**

<i>Flight Level</i>	<i>Geopotential altitude (ft)</i>	<i>ICAO Standard atmospheric pressure level (hPa)</i>	<i>Pressure levels (hPa) referenced in Annex 3, Appendix 2</i>
FL 50	5 000	843.1	850
FL 60	6 000	812.0	800
FL 80	8 000	752.6	750
FL 100	10 000	696.8	700
FL 140	14 000	595.2	600
FL 180	18 000	506.0	500
FL 210	21 000	446.5	450
FL 240	24 000	392.7	400
FL 270	27 000	344.3	350
FL 300	30 000	300.9	300
FL 320	32 000	274.5	275
FL 340	34 000	250.0	250
FL 360	36 000	227.3	225
FL 390	39 000	196.8	200
FL 410	41 000	178.7	175
FL 450	45 000	147.5	150
FL 480	48 000	127.7	125
FL 530	53 000	100.4	100

*Note.— Upper-air humidity forecasts are prepared only up to FL 180 (500 hPa).*

3.7.2.3 The foregoing forecasts prepared by WAFCs consist of computer-processed meteorological data for grid points in a regular grid with a horizontal resolution of 1.25° of latitude and longitude.

3.7.2.4 In addition, forecasts of cumulonimbus (CB) clouds, icing and turbulence are prepared in gridded form four times daily by WAFCs and are valid for 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, 21, 24, 27, 30, 33 and 36 hours after the time (0000, 0600, 1200 and 1800 UTC) of the synoptic data on which they are based. Each forecast is disseminated as soon as technically feasible, and not later than 5 hours after the standard time of observation.

3.7.2.5 The forecasts of CB clouds depict the horizontal extent and flight level of base and top of CB clouds. Forecasts of icing and turbulence are prepared for layers centred at flight levels as shown in Table 3-6. The layers regarding icing have a depth of 100 hPa, while turbulence forecasts have a depth of 100 hPa for flight levels below FL 240 and a depth of 50 hPa for FL 240 and above.

3.7.2.6 The forecasts of CB clouds, icing and turbulence prepared by WAFCs consist of computer-processed meteorological data for grid points in a regular grid with a horizontal resolution of 0.25° of latitude and longitude.

3.7.2.7 All the WAFS upper-air forecasts are provided by the WAFCs in the form of gridded global datasets using the WMO GRIB 2 code form. They are intended for direct use in automatic flight planning systems and may be:

- a) transmitted from one meteorological computer to another, e.g. an airline flight planning computer, an ATS computer, or the computer of a national meteorological service or an aerodrome meteorological office; and
- b) used for the extraction and production of the required upper-air information.

The forecasts are made available using two AFS Internet-based services. The operator may use these data in their flight planning decisions, in accordance with their own business model and safety management systems. It is important to note that the WAFCs do not provide visualizations of upper-air gridded global forecasts in support of flight documentation requirements included in Annex 3, Chapter 9.

*Note.* — *The GRIB code form is contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.2, Part B — Binary Codes.*

### 3.7.3 WAFS forecasts of significant en-route weather phenomena

3.7.3.1 SIGWX forecasts are prepared by WAFCs four times a day for fixed, valid times of 0000, 0600, 1200 and 1800 UTC in binary format, i.e. in the WMO BUFR code form and/or PNG chart form. The dissemination of SIGWX forecasts should be completed at least 17 hours before their validity time under normal operations, and no later than 15 hours before their validity time during backup operations.

3.7.3.2 SIGWX forecasts in the BUFR code form are to be supplemented by the dissemination of these forecasts in IWXXM GML form.

*Note 1.* — *The technical specifications for IWXXM are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.3, Part D — Representation Derived from Data Models. Guidance on the implementation of IWXXM is provided in the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (Doc 10003).*

*Note 2.* — *Geography markup language (GML) is an encoding standard of the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC).*

**Table 3-6. Details of forecasts of icing and turbulence**

<i>Layer centred at flight level (pressure in hPa in brackets)</i>	<i>Icing</i>	<i>Turbulence</i>
60 (800)	X	—
100 (700)	X	X
140 (600)	X	X
180 (500)	X	X
240 (400)	X	X
270 (350)	—	X
300 (300)	X	X
340 (250)	—	X
390 (200)	—	X
450 (150)	—	X

3.7.3.3 High-level and medium-level SIGWX forecasts concentrate on significant en-route weather phenomena of relevance to flights operating at medium and high levels, namely:

- a) tropical cyclone;

*Note.— The maximum of the 10-minute surface wind speed must reach or exceed 17 m/s (34 kt).*

- b) severe squall lines;

- c) moderate or severe turbulence (in-cloud or clear air);

- d) moderate or severe icing;

- e) widespread sandstorm/duststorm;

- f) CB clouds associated with a) to e) above;

- g) flight level of tropopause;

- h) jet streams;

- i) information on the location of volcanic eruptions which are producing ash clouds of significance to aircraft operations, comprising volcanic eruption symbol at the location of the volcanic eruption, the name of the volcano (if known), and the latitude/longitude of the eruption. In addition, the legend of SIGWX charts should indicate “CHECK SIGMET, ADVISORIES FOR TC AND VA, AND ASHTAM AND NOTAM FOR VA”; and

- j) information on the location of a release of radioactive materials into the atmosphere of significance to aircraft operations, comprising the radioactive materials in the atmosphere symbol at the location of the release. Further details are to be given in a separate text box on the chart: the radioactive materials in



the atmosphere symbol, the latitude/longitude of the site of the release; and (if known) the name of the site of the radioactive source. In addition, the legend of SIGWX charts on which a release of radiation is indicated should contain "CHECK SIGMET AND NOTAM FOR RDOACT CLD".

3.7.3.4 The following criteria are used by the WAFCs when including items in the SIGWX forecasts:

- a) tropical cyclones, severe squall lines, moderate and severe turbulence, moderate and severe icing, sandstorm/duststorm and CB clouds are included if expected to occur between the lower and upper level of the SIGWX forecast;
- b) the abbreviation "CB" should be included only where it refers to the occurrence or expected occurrence of CB:
  - 1) affecting an area with a maximum spatial coverage of 50 per cent or more of the area concerned;
  - 2) along a line with little or no space between individual clouds; or
  - 3) embedded in cloud layers or concealed by haze.
- c) the inclusion of "CB" should be understood to include all weather phenomena normally associated with CB clouds, namely, thunderstorm, moderate or severe icing, moderate or severe turbulence, and hail;
- d) where a volcanic ash eruption or a release of radioactive material into the atmosphere warrants the inclusion of the volcanic activity symbol or the radioactivity symbol in SIGWX forecasts, the symbols should be included on both high-level and medium-level SIGWX forecasts, regardless of the flight levels to which the volcanic ash column or radioactive material is reported or expected to reach; and
- e) in the case of coincident or partial overlapping of items a), i) and j) in 3.7.3.3, the highest priority must be given to item i), followed by item j) and a). The item with the highest priority is to be placed at the location of the event, and an arrow used to link the location of the other item(s) to its associated symbol or text box.

3.7.3.5 WAFCs issue the following SIGWX forecasts:

- a) high-level SIGWX forecasts for flight levels between FL 250 and FL 630; and
- b) medium-level SIGWX forecasts for flight levels between FL 100 and FL 250 for limited geographical areas in accordance with regional air navigation agreement.

*Note 1.— Examples of the form of presentation of high- and medium-level SIGWX forecasts are given in Annex 3, Appendix 1.*

*Note 2.— Medium-level SIGWX forecasts are planned to be phased out as soon as flight documentation generated from the gridded forecasts of CB clouds, icing and turbulence fully meet user requirements.*

3.7.3.6 The SIGWX forecasts issued by the WAFCs are in support of the flight documentation requirements included in Annex 3, Chapter 9.

3.7.3.7 In order to assist WAFCs in improving their SIGWX forecasts, while under continuous review, it is an important responsibility of aerodrome meteorological offices receiving WAFS forecasts to notify the WAFCs concerned of significant discrepancies between SIGWX forecasts and observed conditions.

3.7.3.8 Aerodrome meteorological offices may contribute to improving the quality of SIGWX forecasts issued by the WAFCs by two means:

- a) by assisting the WAFCs in finalizing their SIGWX forecasts immediately prior to issuance through participation in a WAFS SIGWX chat room; and
- b) by providing feedback relating to discrepancies between issued SIGWX forecasts and observed or reported conditions.

*Note.* —The WAFS SIGWX chat room is open half an hour prior to the standard time of issuance of SIGWX forecasts, and participants can view or comment on a draft version of the SIGWX forecasts, displayed in chart form, prior to their issuance. To participate in the WAFS SIGWX chat room, the aerodrome meteorological office concerned should contact [wifs.admin@noaa.gov](mailto:wifs.admin@noaa.gov) to arrange for the establishment of a chat room user account.

3.7.3.9 To report discrepancies that occur in SIGWX forecasts issued by WAFCs, the notification by aerodrome meteorological offices should be based on the criteria given in Appendix E of this manual. Abbreviated plain language should be used in preparing the notification in accordance with the guidance material given in Appendix E. E-mail should be used for transmission of notifications of discrepancies to the relevant WAFC. The WAFC, after receiving such a notification, should acknowledge receipt and make a brief comment including, if necessary, a proposal for follow-up action.

3.7.3.10 The WAFCs will only issue corrections to SIGWX forecasts resulting from errors in the originally issued forecast. The WAFCs will not, and are not required to, issue amendments that are as a result of the atmosphere evolving differently to that originally expected. Table 3-7 highlights the distinction between errors (which require the issuance of a correction) and changes in the atmospheric conditions (which do not require the issuance of an amendment).

**Table 3-7. Examples of errors (requiring a correction to WAFS SIGWX forecasts) and changes in the atmospheric conditions (not requiring an amendment to WAFS SIGWX forecasts)**

<i>Errors requiring a correction by WAFCs</i>	<i>Changes <b>not</b> requiring an amendment by WAFCs</i>
A SIGWX forecast should have a jet stream height of FL340. The forecaster inadvertently indicates FL430.	A SIGWX forecast indicates a jet stream height of FL340; on subsequent evidence (numerical data, aircraft reports etc.) the jet stream height may be expected to be at FL370. On the basis of the original data, however, FL340 was an entirely reasonable forecast value.
A volcano symbol or tropical cyclone symbol was inadvertently omitted when there was information at the time of issuance for its inclusion.	After the issuance of a forecast, WAFC is made aware of a volcano that has recently erupted. This information could not possibly have been known by the forecasters at the time of issuance.

3.7.3.11 In the event of a correction being required, the WAFCs will re-issue a full set of their WAFc SIGWX forecasts, i.e. all of the SIGWX BUFR files and all of the SIGWX PNG files, for the affected validity time. In addition to the re-issued forecasts, the WAFc issuing the corrected forecasts will also issue administrative messages. One administrative message will contain information describing the nature of the correction while another administrative message will list all of the re-issued SIGWX files, as shown in Example 3-4.

3.7.3.12 The content of such corrections and related administrative messages shall be brought to the attention of users of the WAFS SIGWX forecast at the pre-flight planning stage. Where relevant to a particular flight, such correction information may, where practicable, be forwarded to aircraft in flight.

3.7.3.13 WAFS SIGWX forecasts remain subject to correction up until three hours before the fixed validity time of the affected forecast.

**Example 3-4. Administrative messages**

- a) identifying the nature of the corrections made to WAFS SIGWX BUFR data and PNG charts; and  
b) listing the retransmitted WAFS SIGWX forecasts**

(also see Figure 3-1)

*Note 1.— The text below (issued with WMO Abbreviated Heading Line «FXUK65 EGRR») would be distributed by WAFS London to advise users of the nature of the original error, and the correct information. It may be used to quickly identify the modified area on the respective WAFS SIGWX BUFR and PNG formatted forecasts. It also serves to inform users who, for whatever reason, are unable to receive the re-issued SIGWX forecasts.*

WAFS LONDON HAS IDENTIFIED A PROBLEM WITH THE FOLLOWING HIGH LEVEL SIGWX BUFR AND SIGWX PNG CHARTS VALID AT 101800 UTC:

BUFR — JUBE99 EGRR ISSUED AT 100050 UTC  
PNG — PGSE05 EGRR, PGRE05 EGRR ISSUED AT 100050 UTC

AFFECTING GEOGRAPHICAL AREA: BETWEEN BRAZIL AND WEST AFRICA  
AND ICAO CHART AREA: B C

USERS ARE ADVISED THAT THE EMBD CB TOP SHOULD BE FL420 AND NOT FL250

WAFS LONDON HAS ISSUED CORRECTED BUFR AND PNG BULLETINS UNDER CORRECTION HEADER CCA.

ISSUED BY WAFS LONDON=

*Note 2. — The text below (issued with WMO Abbreviated Heading Line «FXUK66 EGRR») would be distributed by WAFS London to indicate the bulletins to be re-issued. The message is intended to be a prompt to automated systems to permit reloading of the corrected SIGWX forecasts.*

RETRANSMITTED WAFS LONDON DATA:

DATA TYPE: WAFS LONDON SIGWX BUFR AND PNG

ORIGINAL WMO AHL:

PG//// EGRR 091800

JU//// EGRR 091800

RETRANSMITTED WMO AHL:

PG//// EGRR 091800 CCA

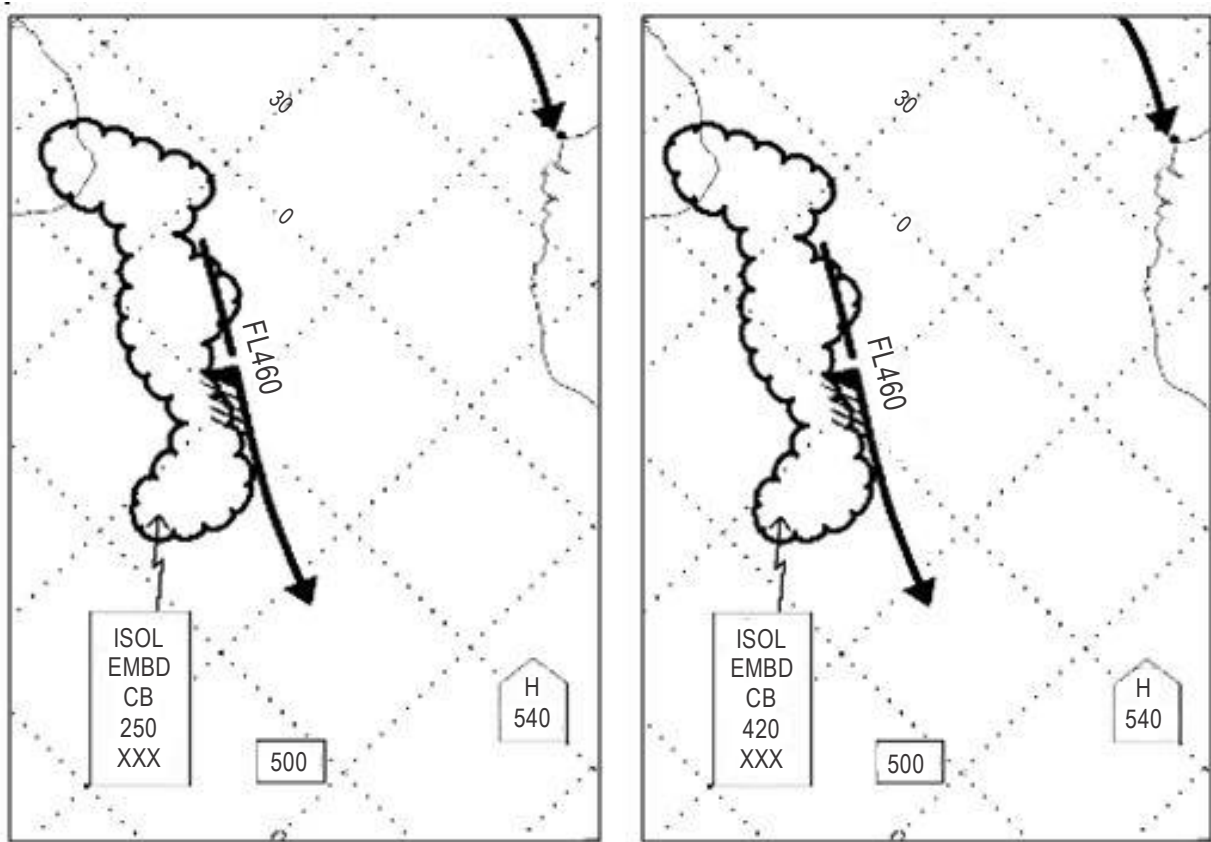
JU//// EGRR 091800 CCA

WHERE PG//// REPRESENTS ALL WAFS LONDON SIGWX PNG FILES AND JU//// REPRESENTS ALL WAFS LONDON SIGWX BUFR FILES

ALL WAFS LONDON SIGWX BUFR AND PNG FILES INDICATED ABOVE ARE NOW BEING RE TRANSMITTED.

ISSUED BY WAFS LONDON=

*Note 3. — If the correction concerned SIGWX forecasts issued by WAFS Washington, the administrative messages above would be issued using WMO Abbreviated Heading Lines «FXUS65 KKCI» and «FXUS66 KKCI», respectively.*



**Figure 3-1. An example of a correction made to a SIGWX forecast issued in the PNG chart form.**

In the left panel, the originally issued forecast shows an erroneous height for the isolated and embedded CB cloud (FL 250) while in the right panel, the erroneous height has been replaced with the corrected value (FL 420).

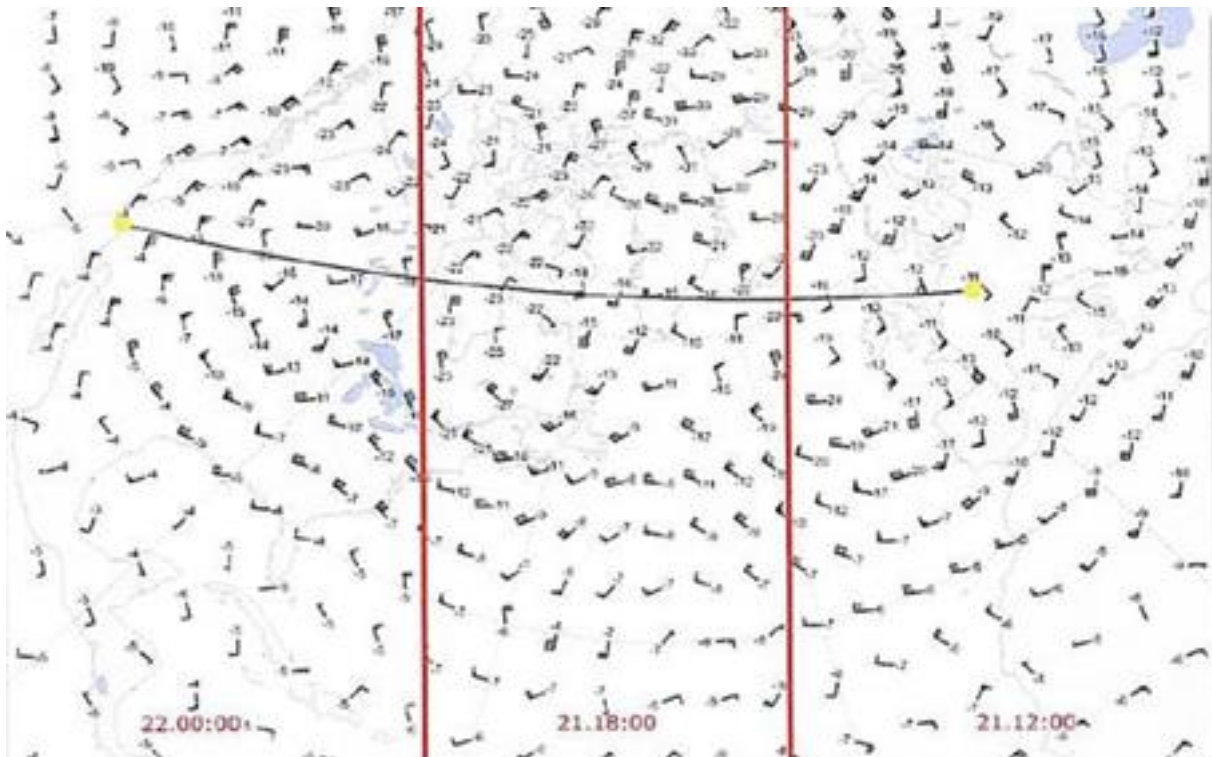
#### 3.7.4 Concatenated upper wind and upper-air temperature prognostic charts based on WAFS forecasts

Annex 3 allows for the provision of route-specific concatenated upper wind and upper-air temperature forecasts when agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned. In this context, concatenated forecasts consist of a series of WAFS upper-air gridded wind and temperature forecasts, with consecutive valid times, displayed on the same chart, to cover the period of flight. This means that spatial and temporal interpolation could be used for generating a route-specific wind/temperature prognostic chart from data from consecutive valid times, as required by users, to meet the requirements of long-haul flights. It should be noted that while WAFCs do not issue concatenated WAFS forecasts as an image (i.e. in the PNG chart form), they do provide the necessary gridded forecasts to allow such products to be generated. An example of a concatenated prognostic chart is provided in Figure 3-2.

#### 3.7.5 Area forecasts for low-level flights

3.7.5.1 When the density of traffic operating below FL 100 (or up to FL 150 or higher, where necessary in mountainous areas) warrants the issuance of AIRMET information in accordance with 4.4.1.1, in accordance with regional

air navigation agreement, area forecasts for such operations are to be prepared in a format as agreed between meteorological authorities in the States concerned and communicated to the MWOs responsible for the issuance of relevant AIRMET information. These area forecasts should cover the layer between the ground and FL 100 (or up to FL 150 or higher in mountainous areas) and should be prepared either in abbreviated plain language or in chart form.



**Figure 3-2. Concatenated upper wind and upper-air temperature prognostic charts based on WAFS forecasts.**

The chart includes WAFS forecasts for valid times at 1200 UTC and 1800 UTC on the 21st and at 0000 UTC on the 22nd. Note that the valid times of 1500 UTC and 2100 UTC on the 21st have not been used in this specific example.

3.7.5.2 When abbreviated plain language is used, area forecasts are to be prepared as an area forecast for low-level flights (GAMET) in accordance with the template shown in Annex 3, Appendix 5, Table A5-3 (see Example 3-5 and Table 3-8) using approved ICAO abbreviations and numerical values. When chart form is used, the forecast is to be issued as a combination of upper wind and upper-air temperature forecasts, and of low-level SIGWX forecast.

3.7.5.3 AIRMET information is issued when specified en-route weather phenomena hazardous to low-level flights occur or are expected to occur which have not been included in the corresponding GAMET area forecast or low-level SIGWX forecast, and consequently have also not been included in the flight documentation for low-level flights supplied to pilots. Complete information regarding the en-route weather phenomena hazardous to low-level flights is contained in the first part (i.e. Section I) of the GAMET area template given in Annex 3, Appendix 5, Table A5-3.

3.7.5.4 Where the area forecasts for low-level flights are prepared by aerodrome meteorological offices and/or MWOs in chart form:

- a) the forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature are to be issued for points separated by no more than 500 km (300 NM) and for at least the following altitudes: 600, 1 500 and 3 000 m (2 000, 5 000 and 10 000 ft) and 4 500 m (15 000 ft) in mountainous areas; and

*Note.— A spatial resolution similar to the one specified in a) above should be applied to the element “wind and temperatures” included in GAMET area forecasts.*

- b) the forecast of low-level SIGWX must show the following items:
  - 1) the phenomena warranting the issuance of a SIGMET given in 4.2.1.1 and which are expected to affect low-level flights; and
  - 2) the elements in GAMET area forecasts as given in Annex 3, Appendix 5, Table A5-3, except wind and temperature, and forecast QNH.

3.7.5.5 Area forecasts for low-level flights (i.e. GAMET or a combination of upper wind, upper-air temperature and low-level SIGWX forecasts) prepared in support of the issuance of AIRMET information are issued every six hours for a period of validity of six hours and disseminated to the aeronautical fixed service Internet-based services, aerodrome meteorological offices and/or MWOs concerned not later than one hour prior to the beginning of their validity period. Additional provisions concerning the issuance of GAMET area forecasts and low-level SIGWX forecasts are given in Table 3-8.

*Note.— Area forecasts for low-level flights addressed in 3.7.5 are prepared in accordance with regional air navigation agreement, similar to the corresponding AIRMET information.*

**Example 3-5. GAMET area forecast**

YUCC\* GAMET VALID 220600/221200 YUDO\*  
 AMSWELL\* FIR/2 BLW FL100  
 SECN I  
 SFC WIND: 10/12 310/17MPS  
 SFC VIS: 06/08 N OR N51 3000M BR  
 SIGWX: 11/12 ISOL TS  
 SIG CLD: 06/09 N OF N51 OVC 800/1100FT AGL 10/12 ISOL TCU 1200/8000FT  
 AGL  
 ICE:MOD FL050/080  
 TURB: MOD ABV FL090  
 SIGMETS APPLICABLE: 3,5  
 SECN II  
 PSYS: 06 N5130 E01000 L 1004HPA MOV NE 25KT WKN  
 WIND/T: 2000FT N5500 W01000 270/18MPS PS03 5000FT N5500 W01000  
 250/20MPS MS02 10000FT N5500 W01000 240/22MPS MS11  
 CLD: BKN SC 2500/8000 FT AGL  
 FZLVL: 3000 FT AGL  
 MNM QNH: 1004 HPA  
 SEA: T15 HGT 5M  
 VA: NIL

Meaning: An area forecast for low-level flights (GAMET) issued for sub-area two of the Amswell\* flight information region (identified by YUCC Amswell area control centre) for below flight level 100 by the Donlon/International\* aerodrome meteorological office (YUDO); the message is valid from 0600 UTC to 1200 UTC on the 22nd of the month.

## Section I:

surface wind direction and speed: between 1000 UTC and 1200 UTC surface wind direction 310 degrees wind speed 17 metres per second;  
 surface visibility: between 0600 UTC and 0800 UTC north of 51 degrees north 3 000 metres (due to mist);  
 significant weather phenomena: between 1100 UTC and 1200 UTC isolated thunderstorms without hail;  
 significant clouds: between 0600 UTC and 0900 UTC north of 51 degrees north overcast base 800, top 1 100 feet above ground level; between 1000 UTC and 1200 UTC isolated towering cumulus base 1 200, top 8 000 feet above ground level;  
 icing: moderate between flight level 050 and 080;  
 turbulence: moderate above flight level 090 (at least up to flight level 100);  
 SIGMET messages: 3 and 5 applicable to the validity period and sub-area concerned.

## Section II:

pressure systems: at 0600 UTC low pressure of 1 004 hectopascals at 51 degrees 30 minutes north 10 degrees east, expected to move north-eastwards at 25 knots and to weaken;  
 winds and temperatures: at 2 000 feet (above ground level) at 55 degrees north 10 degrees west wind direction 270 degrees; wind speed 18 metres per second,



clouds:	temperature plus 3 degrees Celsius; at 5 000 feet (above ground level) at 55 degrees north 10 degrees west wind direction 250 degrees; wind speed 20 metres per second, temperature minus 2 degrees Celsius; at 10 000 feet (above ground level) at 55 degrees north 10 degrees west wind direction 240 degrees; wind speed 22 metres per second, temperature minus 11 degrees Celsius;
freezing level:	broken stratocumulus, base 2 500 feet, top 8 000 feet above ground level;
minimum QNH:	3 000 feet above ground level;
sea:	1 004 hectopascals;
volcanic ash:	surface temperature 15 degrees Celsius; and state of sea 5 metres;
	nil.
* Fictitious locations	

**Table 3-8. Additional provisions concerning the issuance of GAMET area forecasts and low-level SIGWX forecasts in support of the issuance of AIRMET information**

<i>Condition</i>	<i>Action</i>
Specific hazardous phenomenon not expected <i>or</i> expected but already covered by SIGMET information	Omit from the GAMET forecast; include a reference to the number(s) of SIGMET valid for the FIR in the GAMET forecast
No hazardous phenomenon expected <i>and</i> no SIGMET information applicable	The term "HAZARDOUS WX NIL" replaces all the lines from the third line onward in Section I of GAMET
Specific hazardous phenomenon has been included in GAMET but does not occur <i>or</i> is no longer forecast to occur	Issue GAMET AMD <i>or</i> an updated low-level SIGWX forecast amending the element concerned (in Section I of GAMET <i>or</i> in the low-level SIGWX forecast, respectively).



## Chapter 4

# SIGMET INFORMATION, TROPICAL CYCLONE AND VOLCANIC ASH ADVISORY INFORMATION, AIRMET INFORMATION, AERODROME WARNINGS, WIND SHEAR WARNINGS AND ALERTS, AND SPACE WEATHER ADVISORY INFORMATION

### 4.1 GENERAL

The preparation and issuance of information advising pilots and other aeronautical personnel of weather conditions likely to affect the safety of international air navigation are important functions of aerodrome meteorological offices and meteorological watch offices (MWOs). In fact, MWOs exist primarily to prepare and issue information on potentially hazardous en-route weather phenomena in their areas of responsibility (see 1.3). This information is called SIGMET and AIRMET information. Tropical cyclone, volcanic ash and space weather advisories are products of tropical cyclone advisory centres (TCACs), volcanic ash advisory centres (VAACs) and space weather centres (SWXC) (see 1.6, 1.7 and 1.9) intended for aviation users. MWOs use tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisories to prepare SIGMET information for tropical cyclones and volcanic ash clouds. The issuance of warnings of hazardous weather conditions at or near aerodromes, including wind shear warnings, is usually the primary responsibility of aerodrome meteorological offices.

*Note.— Data-type designators to be used in abbreviated headings for messages containing SIGMET and AIRMET information, and tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisories, are given in 6.2.2 and in the Manual on the Global Telecommunication System (WMO-No. 386).*

### 4.2 SIGMET INFORMATION

#### 4.2.1 Weather phenomena contained in SIGMET information

4.2.1.1 The purpose of SIGMET information is to advise pilots of the occurrence or expected occurrence of en-route weather and other phenomena in the atmosphere which may affect the safety of aircraft operations. The weather phenomena listed below, when occurring at cruising levels (irrespective of altitude), call for the issuance of SIGMET:

*thunderstorm*

obscured	OBSC TS
embedded	EMBD TS
frequent	FRQ TS
squall line	SQL TS
obscured with hail	OBSC TSGR
embedded with hail	EMBD TSGR
frequent, with hail	FRQ TSGR
squall line with hail	SQL TSGR

<i>tropical cyclone</i>	tropical cyclone with 10-minute mean surface wind speed of 17 m/s (34 kt) or more	TC (+ cyclone name)
<i>turbulence</i>	severe turbulence	SEV TURB
<i>icing</i>	severe icing	SEV ICE
	severe icing due to freezing rain	SEV ICE (FZRA)
<i>mountain wave</i>	severe mountain wave	SEV MTW
<i>duststorm</i>	heavy duststorm	HVY DS
<i>sandstorm</i>	heavy sandstorm	HVY SS
<i>volcanic ash</i>	volcanic ash	VA (+ volcano name, if known)
<i>radioactive cloud</i>	radioactive cloud	RDOACT CLD

Only one element from those listed above may be used in a SIGMET. It should be noted that although SIGMET information is required to be issued for cruising levels, there is no stated lower limit regarding the height for which a SIGMET should be issued. Since the occurrence of the above phenomena is of importance to aircraft during all phases of flight, MWOs should issue a SIGMET irrespective of the altitude of the phenomenon. This requirement is explicitly stated in Annex 3 for all SIGMETs.

*Note 1.— Sandstorm/duststorm should be considered heavy whenever visibility is below 200 m and the sky is obscured, and moderate whenever visibility is either below 200 m and the sky is not obscured or between 200 m and 600 m.*

*Note 2.— In SIGMET for radioactive cloud, a radius of up to 30 km (16 NM) from the source and a vertical extent from surface to the upper limit of the FIR/UIR or CTA are to be applied. The value of 30 km (16 NM) is based on the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) Safety Guide GS-G-2.1 – Arrangements for Preparedness for a Nuclear or Radiological Emergency (2007).*

4.2.1.2 Messages concerning thunderstorms, tropical cyclones or severe squall lines should not include references to associated turbulence or icing.

4.2.1.3 SIGMET information is often based on special air-reports; it may also be based on weather satellite data, and on ground-based observations such as weather radar observations, or on forecasts.

#### 4.2.2 Dissemination of SIGMET information

4.2.2.1 SIGMET information is disseminated to aircraft in flight through associated air traffic services (ATS) units. Aircraft in flight should be given, on the initiative of flight information centres (FICs), SIGMET information affecting their routes to a distance equivalent to two hours' flying time ahead of the position of the aircraft.

4.2.2.2 SIGMET information is disseminated to MWOs, world area forecast centres (WAFCs) and other meteorological offices/stations as determined by regional air navigation agreement. Furthermore, SIGMET information is transmitted to OPMET databanks and to the international centres responsible for operation of the aeronautical fixed service (AFS) Internet-based services. In addition, SIGMET information for volcanic ash cloud is disseminated to VAACs.

Operators are supplied with SIGMET information mainly from aerodrome meteorological offices. They can also obtain this information through various automated meteorological information systems or through automated information systems for pre-flight planning. SIGMET information is to be available at departure aerodromes for the whole route.

#### 4.2.3 Specific provisions related to the issuance of SIGMET information

4.2.3.1 *Period of validity.* The period of validity of a SIGMET is not to exceed four hours. In the special case of a SIGMET for volcanic ash cloud or tropical cyclones, the period of validity is to be extended to six hours.

4.2.3.2 *Issuance.* SIGMETs relating to the expected occurrence of weather phenomena, with the exception of volcanic ash cloud and tropical cyclones, must not be issued more than four hours before the expected time of occurrence of such phenomena. In order to provide advance warning of the existence of volcanic ash cloud and tropical cyclones, SIGMETs related to these phenomena must be issued as soon as practicable but not more than twelve hours before the commencement of the period of validity.

4.2.3.3 *Update.* SIGMETs for volcanic ash cloud and tropical cyclones need to be updated at least every six hours. For the updating of other SIGMETs, there are no provisions in Annex 3 since most phenomena prompting the issuance of SIGMETs do not last more than the maximum period of validity of such SIGMETs, i.e. four hours. However, if the phenomenon were expected to persist beyond the end of the period of validity, the SIGMET would need to be updated. The update could be timed during the period of validity of the previous SIGMET to coincide with the reception of new meteorological information by the MWO (e.g. satellite data, radar data, special air-reports, output from numerical weather prediction models) while complying with the Annex 3 provision stipulating that SIGMETs are not to be issued more than four hours before the commencement of their period of validity. SIGMETs are cancelled by the issuing office when the phenomena are no longer occurring or are no longer expected to occur in the area.

4.2.3.4 SIGMETs for tropical cyclones are to be issued only by the MWO responsible for the watch of the flight information region (FIR) in which the centre of the tropical cyclone is located. Whenever a neighbouring FIR is influenced by cumulonimbus (CB) clouds and thunderstorms associated with the tropical cyclone, the MWO concerned must issue a SIGMET for such thunderstorms.

4.2.3.5 It should be noted that information on volcanic ash cloud and associated volcanic activity is promulgated to users, including ATS units, also by NOTAM or by ASHTAM. ASHTAM and NOTAM for volcanic ash include information on diversions, air route closures, etc. due to volcanic ash. Area control centres (ACCs)/FICs receive volcanic ash advisories from the VAACs to which they are associated in accordance with regional air navigation agreement. In view of this, it is important that MWOs maintain close coordination with their associated ACCs/FICs (and relevant aeronautical information service (AIS) units) to ensure that information on volcanic ash in SIGMETs is consistent with that in NOTAM or ASHTAM.

*Note.— Information on procedures to be used for the dissemination of information on volcanic eruptions is given in the Manual on Volcanic Ash, Radioactive Material and Toxic Chemical Clouds (Doc 9691), and the Handbook on the International Airways Volcano Watch (IAVW) — Operational Procedures and Contact List (Doc 9766).*

4.2.3.6 *Harmonized SIGMET information.* Whenever the weather phenomenon prompting the issuance of SIGMET information extends, or is expected to extend, beyond its area of responsibility, (i.e. the flight information region (FIR) concerned), MWOs should coordinate the content of SIGMET information with neighbouring MWO(s) concerned. It is advisable that all the MWOs establish arrangements with neighbouring MWOs on how to carry out coordination related to the content of SIGMET information for weather phenomena concerning more than one FIR. Such arrangements should specify how the MWOs exchange the planned (draft) SIGMET information covering more than one FIR with the neighbouring MWO(s) concerned, before its formal issuance. Due to potentially adverse safety impacts of delayed SIGMET information, it is essential that the coordination be done promptly and that the delay of the issuance of SIGMET

information resulting from this coordination be kept to a strict minimum. The MWO should take into account, to the extent possible, the proposals of the neighbouring MWO(s). However, the MWO issuing the SIGMET has the last word on its content, since the end responsibility of SIGMET information continues to lie with the MWO assigned for issuing SIGMET for the FIR concerned.

#### 4.2.4 Format of SIGMET information

4.2.4.1 SIGMET information (see Example 4-1) is issued in abbreviated plain language using approved ICAO abbreviations. In order to facilitate computer processing of the information, strict adherence to the relevant specifications concerning SIGMET information is essential. To describe weather phenomena, no additional descriptive material is therefore permitted. Detailed technical specifications for SIGMETs are contained in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A. Additional guidance on the format of SIGMET information for tropical cyclones is provided in Appendix K.

*Note 1.— The sequence number in SIGMET information referred to in the template in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A corresponds to the number of pieces of such information issued for the FIR since 0001 UTC on the day concerned. However, in instances where a combination of alphanumeric characters is used to represent the sequence number (e.g. A1), this corresponds to the number of pieces of such information issued for the FIR since 0001 UTC for each phenomenon on the day concerned.*

*Note 2.— For further details on the preparation and dissemination of SIGMET information, see the regional SIGMET guides prepared by the ICAO regional offices for use in their respective regions. Information on the required exchanges of SIGMET information between meteorological offices/stations is contained in the relevant electronic regional air navigation plan (eANP), Volume II, Part V, Table MET II-1. Additional useful information including arrangements for the distribution of SIGMET information at aerodromes and to FICs, etc., can be obtained from the Manual on Coordination between Air Traffic Services, Aeronautical Information Services and Aeronautical Meteorological Services (Doc 9377).*

#### Example 4-1. SIGMET information

*Note.— Additional examples of SIGMET information can be found in the regional SIGMET guides issued by ICAO regional offices.*

a) *SIGMET for severe turbulence:*

YUCC\* SIGMET 5 VALID 221215/221600 YUDO\*—  
YUCC AMSWELL\* FIR SEV TURB OBS AT 1210Z AT YUSB\* FL250 INTSF FCST AT 1600Z S OF N2020  
AND E OF W06950

Meaning:

The fifth SIGMET issued for the Amwell\* flight information region (identified by YUCC Amwell area control centre) by the Donlon/International\* meteorological watch office (YUDO) since 0001 UTC; the message is valid from 1215 UTC to 1600 UTC on the 22nd of the month; severe turbulence was observed at 1210 UTC over Siby/Bistock\* aerodrome (YUSB) at flight level 250; the turbulence is expected to strengthen in intensity; at 1600 UTC the severe turbulence is forecast to be located south of 20 degrees 20 minutes north and east of 69 degrees 50 minutes west.

b) *SIGMET for tropical cyclone:*

YUCC\* SIGMET 3 VALID 251600/252200 YUDO\*—

YUCC AMSWELL\* FIR TC GLORIA PSN N2706 W07306 CB OBS AT 1600Z WI 205NM OF TC CENTRE  
TOP FL500 NC FCST AT 2200Z TC CENTRE PSN N2740 W07345

Meaning:

The third SIGMET issued for the Amswell\* flight information region (identified by YUCC Amswell area control centre) by the Donlon/International\* meteorological watch office (YUDO) since 0001 UTC; the message is valid from 1600 UTC to 2200 UTC on the 25th of the month; tropical cyclone Gloria at 27 degrees 6 minutes north, 73 degrees 6 minutes west; cumulonimbus was observed at 1600 UTC within 250 nautical miles of the centre of the tropical cyclone with top at flight level 500; no changes in intensity are expected; at 2200 UTC the centre of the tropical cyclone is forecast to be located at 27 degrees 40 minutes north, 73 degrees 45 minutes west.

c) *SIGMET for volcanic ash:*

YUKK\* SIGMET 2 VALID 211100/211700 YUGG\*–  
YUKK KENTAL\* FIR/UIR VA ERUPTION MT ASHVAL PSN S1500 E07348 VA CLD OBS AT 1100Z APRX 50 KM  
WID LINE BTN S1500 E07348 – S1530 E07642 FL310/450 INTSF FCST AT 1700Z APRX 50 KM WID LINE BTN  
S1506 E07500 – S1518 E08112 – S1712 E08330

Meaning:

The second SIGMET issued for the Kental\* flight information region/upper flight information region (identified by YUKK Kental area control centre/upper information centre) by the Gales\* meteorological watch office (YUGG) since 0001 UTC; the message is valid from 1100 UTC to 1700 UTC on the 21st of the month; a volcanic ash eruption at the Mount Ashval volcano located at 15 degrees south, 73 degrees 48 minutes east; volcanic ash cloud observed at 1100 UTC in an approximately 50 km wide line between 15 degrees south and 73 degrees 48 minutes east, and 15 degrees 30 minutes south and 76 degrees 42 minutes east; between flight levels 310 and 450; intensifying at 1700 UTC the volcanic ash cloud is forecast to be located in an approximately 50 km wide line between 15 degrees 6 minutes south and 75 degrees east, 15 degrees 18 minutes south and 81 degrees 12 minutes east, 17 degrees 12 minutes south and 83 degrees 30 minutes east.

d) *SIGMET information to be cancelled:*

*Note.— The content of the message below relates to SIGMET information in a). This type of message applies also to SIGMET information for tropical cyclone and volcanic ash cloud shown in b) and c).*

YUCC\* SIGMET 6 VALID 221400/1600 YUDO\*–  
YUCC AMSWELL\* FIR CNL SIGMET 5 221215/1600

Meaning:

The sixth SIGMET issued for the AMSWELL\* flight information region (identified by YUCC Amswell area control centre) by the Donlon/International\* meteorological watch office (YUDO) since 0001 UTC; the message is valid from 1400 UTC to 1600 UTC on the 22nd of the month. The fifth SIGMET information message of the day is cancelled.

\* Fictitious locations

4.2.4.2 SIGMET information may also be issued in graphical format in accordance with the specifications in Annex 3, Appendix 1. Such SIGMET information includes the use of applicable symbols and/or abbreviations.

4.2.4.3 SIGMET information in alphanumeric format is to be supplemented by the issuance of SIGMET in IWXXM GML form by the MWOs.

*Note 1.— The technical specifications for IWXXM are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.3, Part D — Representation Derived from Data Models. Guidance on the implementation of IWXXM is provided in the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (Doc 10003).*

*Note 2. — Geography markup language (GML) is an encoding standard of the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC).*

### 4.3 TROPICAL CYCLONE AND VOLCANIC ASH ADVISORY INFORMATION

4.3.1 The preparation of SIGMET information is to be based on advisory information produced by TCACs and VAACs (see 1.6 and 1.7). The provision of advisory information from TCACs and VAACs to MWOs is described in the relevant eANP, Volume II; the MWO, which is required to prepare SIGMET information for tropical cyclones and volcanic ash cloud, is associated with the individual TCAC, VAAC and State volcano observatory designated by regional air navigation agreement.

4.3.2 In addition to the MWO concerned, advisories should be distributed to:

- a) *for tropical cyclone advisory information* — WAFCs and TCACs whose areas of responsibility may be affected, international OPMET databanks and the centres responsible for operation of the AFS Internet-based services; and
- b) *for volcanic ash advisory information* — WAFCs and VAACs whose areas of responsibility may be affected, ACCs/FICs whose areas of responsibility may be affected, relevant NOTAM offices, international OPMET databanks, and centres responsible for operation of the AFS Internet-based services.

Operators can obtain the advisory information through the AFS Internet-based services (Secure Aviation Data Information Service (SADIS) FTP and WAFS Internet File Service (WIFS)).

4.3.3 The detailed contents of volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisory information are in Annex 3, Appendix 2, Tables A2-1 and A2-2, respectively. The advisories in alphanumeric format are issued in abbreviated plain language using approved ICAO abbreviations. The order of information presented in both advisories is to be strictly adhered to. Examples 4-2 a) and b) show tropical cyclone advisory and volcanic ash advisory information. The advisories are also to be issued in IWXXM GML form. The advisories may also be issued in graphical format in accordance with the models in Annex 3, Appendix 1.

*Note 1.— The technical specifications for IWXXM are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.3, Part D — Representation Derived from Data Models. Guidance on the implementation of IWXXM is provided in the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (Doc 10003).*

*Note 2. — Geography markup language (GML) is an encoding standard of the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC).*



#### 4.3.4 Tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisory information in graphical format

4.3.4.1 Tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisories in graphical format display all the information contained in the corresponding alphanumeric advisory. Furthermore, graphical tropical cyclone advisories include information additional to the alphanumeric advisories concerning the extent of the gale-force surface winds and the areas affected by frequent CB clouds. Templates for a tropical cyclone and a volcanic ash advisory in graphical format are given in Annex 3, Appendix 1 (Model TCG and Model VAG, respectively, refer).

*Note.— It is important to ensure that the visualization of hazardous areas based on a list of coordinates provided in volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisories is consistent with the original projection from which the information is derived. If alternative projects are used when visualizing such data, appropriate corrections to bounding lines will be required.*

4.3.4.2 Graphical advisories are to be prepared in portable network graphic (PNG) format. To prepare tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisories in graphical format, the TCAC or VAAC can use any graphical software which includes PNG format. However, for ease of use and for consistency between the alphanumeric and graphical advisories, it is useful to have both linked to a common database containing analysis and forecast data.

4.3.4.3 The graphical display of tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisories should be clear and uncluttered, particularly in regard to labelling since graphical advisories are being increasingly used by aviation users in lieu of alphanumeric advisories and tropical cyclone/volcanic ash SIGMET.

4.3.4.4 The ICAO aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN) cannot accommodate graphical advisories. TCACs and VAACs are expected to make their graphical advisories available through their public Internet websites. The following URL addresses can be used to access tropical cyclone advisories:

- a) TCAC Darwin: [www.bom.gov.au](http://www.bom.gov.au);
- b) TCAC Honolulu: <https://www.nhc.noaa.gov/?cpac>;
- c) TCAC La Réunion: [www.meteo.fr/temps/domtom/La\\_Reunion/](http://www.meteo.fr/temps/domtom/La_Reunion/);
- d) TCAC Miami: [www.nhc.noaa.gov](http://www.nhc.noaa.gov);
- e) TCAC Nadi: [www.met.gov.fj/](http://www.met.gov.fj/);

**Example 4-2. Advisory information for tropical cyclones and volcanic ash**

## a) Tropical cyclone advisory

TC ADVISORY  
 DTG: 20070925/1600Z  
 TCAC: YUSO  
 TC: GLORIA  
 ADVISORY NR: 2007/12  
 OBS PSN: 25/1500Z N2706 W07306  
 CB: WI 450KM OF TC CENTRE TOP FL500  
 MOV: NW 20KMH  
 INTST CHANGE: INTSF  
 C: 965HPA  
 MAX WIND: 25MPS  
 FCST PSN + 6 HR: 25/2200Z N2748 W07350  
 FCST MAX WIND + 6 HR: 23MPS  
 FCST PSN + 12 HR: 26/0400Z N2830 W07430  
 FCST MAX WIND + 12 HR: 23MPS  
 FCST PSN + 18 HR: 26/1000Z N2852 W07500  
 FCST MAX WIND + 18 HR: 21MPS  
 FCST PSN + 24 HR: 26/1600Z N2912 W07530  
 FCST MAX WIND + 24 HR: 20MPS  
 RMK: NIL  
 NXT MSG: 20070925/2000Z

*Note.— For the decode see Annex 3, Appendix 2, Table A2-2.*

## b) Volcanic ash advisory

VA ADVISORY  
 DTG: 20000402/0700Z  
 VAAC: TOKYO  
 VOLCANO: USUZAN 285030  
 PSN: N4230 E14048  
 AREA: JAPAN  
 SUMMIT ELEV: 732M  
 ADVISORY NR: 2000/432  
 INFO SOURCE: HIMAWARI-8  
 AVIATION COLOUR CODE: RED  
 ERUPTION DETAILS: ERUPTED 20000402/0614Z ERUPTION OBS VA TO ABV FL300  
 OBS VA DTG: 02/0645Z  
 OBS VA CLD: FL150/350 N4230 E14048 – N4300 E14130 – N4246 E14230 – N4232 E14150 – N4230 E14048 SFC/FL150 MOV NE 25KT FL150/350 MOV E 30KT  
 FCST VA CLD + 6 HR: 02/1245Z SFC/FL200 N4230 E14048 – N4232 E14150 – N4238 E14300 – N4246 E14230 FL200/350 N4230 E14048 – N4232 E14150 – N4238 E14300 – N4246 E14230 FL350/600 NO VA EXP  
 FCST VA CLD + 12 HR: 02/1845Z SFC/FL300 N4230 E14048 – N4232 E14150 – N4238 E14300 – N4246 E14230 FL300/600 NO VA EXP  
 FCST VA CLD + 18 HR: 03/0045Z SFC/FL600 NO VA EXP  
 RMK: VA CLD CAN NO LONGER BE DETECTED ON SATELLITE IMAGE  
 NEXT ADVISORY: 20000402/1300Z

*Note.— For the decode see Annex 3, Appendix 2, Table A2-1.*

f) TCAC New Delhi: <https://rsmcnewdelhi.imd.gov.in/>; and

g) TCAC Tokyo: [www.jma.go.jp/en/typh/](http://www.jma.go.jp/en/typh/).

The websites for the VAACs are included in Doc 9766.

4.3.4.5 Graphical advisories can be delivered over the public Internet following the guidance contained in the *Guidelines on the Use of the Public Internet for Aeronautical Applications* (Doc 9855). Consideration should be given to download size, as some users may have limited bandwidth.

4.3.5 Updates to both types of advisory information are issued, as necessary, but at least every six hours.

## 4.4 AIRMET INFORMATION

### 4.4.1 Weather phenomena contained in AIRMET information

4.4.1.1 The purpose of AIRMET information is to advise pilots of the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en-route weather phenomena which may affect the safety of low-level aircraft operations and which were not already included in the forecast issued for low-level flights (see 3.7.5) in the FIR concerned or sub-area thereof. An MWO whose area of responsibility encompasses more than one FIR and/or CTA issues separate AIRMET for each FIR and/or CTA within its area of responsibility. The weather phenomena listed below, when occurring at cruising levels below FL 100 (or below FL 150 or higher, where necessary in mountainous areas) call for the issuance of AIRMET:

#### *surface wind speed*

widespread mean surface wind speed above 15 m/s (30 kt)

SFC WIND (+ wind direction, speed and units)

#### *surface visibility*

widespread areas affected by the deterioration in visibility to less than 5 000 m, including the weather phenomenon causing the deterioration in visibility

SFC VIS (+ visibility)

(+ weather phenomenon or combination thereof:  
BR, DS, DU, DZ, FC, FG, FU, GR, GS, HZ, PL, PO,  
RA, SA, SG, SN, SQ, SS or VA

#### *thunderstorm*

isolated thunderstorms without hail  
occasional thunderstorms without hail  
isolated thunderstorms with hail  
occasional thunderstorms with hail

ISOL TS

OCNL TS

ISOL TSGR

OCNL TSGR

#### *mountain obscuration*

mountains obscured

MT OBSC

*cloud*

widespread areas of broken or overcast cloud with height of base less than 300 m (1 000 ft) above ground level:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• broken</li> <li>• overcast</li> </ul> | <p>BKN CLD (+ height of the base and top and units)<br/>OVC CLD (+ height of the base and top and units)</p> |
|--|--|

*cumulonimbus clouds which are:*

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• isolated</li> <li>• occasional</li> <li>• frequent</li> </ul> | <p>ISOL CB<br/>OCNL CB<br/>FRQ CB</p> |
|--|---------------------------------------|

*towering cumulus clouds which are:*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• isolated</li> <li>• occasional</li> <li>• frequent</li> </ul> | <p>ISOL TCU<br/>OCNL TCU<br/>FRQ TCU</p> |
|--|--|

*icing*

<p>moderate icing (except for icing in convective clouds)</p>	<p>MOD ICE</p>
---	----------------

*turbulence*

<p>moderate turbulence (except for turbulence in convective clouds)</p>	<p>MOD TURB</p>
---	-----------------

*mountain wave*

<p>moderate mountain wave</p>	<p>MOD MTW</p>
-------------------------------	----------------

Only one element from those listed above may be used in an AIRMET.

4.4.1.2 AIRMET information concerning thunderstorms or CB clouds should not include references to associated turbulence or icing.

*Note.— The specifications for SIGMET information which are also relevant to low-level flights are given in 4.2.1.1.*

4.4.1.3 AIRMET information is often based on weather satellite data, and on ground-based observations such as weather radar observations, or on forecasts.

4.4.1.4 AIRMET information is issued by MWOs in accordance with regional air navigation agreement, such agreement taking into account the density of air traffic operating below FL 100 (or FL 150 in mountainous areas).

#### 4.4.2 Dissemination of AIRMET information

4.4.2.1 AIRMET information is disseminated to aircraft in flight through associated ATS units. Low-level flight operations should normally be provided, by FICs, with AIRMET information affecting their routes.

4.4.2.2 AIRMET information is disseminated to MWOs in adjacent FIRs and to other MWOs or aerodrome meteorological offices as agreed between the meteorological authorities concerned. In addition, in accordance with

regional air navigation agreement, AIRMET information should be transmitted to international OPMET databanks and to the centres designated by regional air navigation agreement for the operation of the AFS Internet-based services.

#### 4.4.3 Specific provisions related to the issuance of AIRMET information

The period of validity of AIRMET information cannot exceed four hours. AIRMET information is cancelled by the issuing office when the phenomena are no longer occurring or are no longer expected to occur in the area.

#### 4.4.4 Format of AIRMET information

4.4.4.1 AIRMET information (see Example 4-3) is issued in abbreviated plain language using approved ICAO abbreviations. In order to facilitate computer processing of the information, strict adherence to the relevant specifications concerning AIRMET information is essential. To describe weather phenomena, no additional descriptive material is therefore permitted. Detailed technical specifications for AIRMET information is contained in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A.

*Note.— The sequence number in AIRMET information referred to in the template in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A corresponds to the number of pieces of such information issued for the FIR since 0001 UTC on the day concerned. However, in instances where a combination of alphanumeric characters is used to represent the sequence number (e.g. A1), this corresponds to the number of pieces of such information issued for the FIR since 0001 UTC for each phenomenon on the day concerned.*

4.4.4.2 AIRMET information in alphanumeric format is also to be supplemented by the issuance of AIRMET in IWXXM GML form by the MWOs.

*Note 1.— The technical specifications for IWXXM are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.3, Part D — Representation Derived from Data Models. Guidance on the implementation of IWXXM is provided in the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (Doc 10003).*

*Note 2. — Geography markup language (GML) is an encoding standard of the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC).*

#### Example 4-3. AIRMET information

YUCC\* AIRMET 2 VALID 221215/221600 YUDO\*—  
YUCC\* AMSWELL FIR MOD MTW OBS AT 1205Z N4800 E01000 FL080 STNR NC

*Meaning:*

The second AIRMET message issued for the Amwell\* flight information region (identified by YUCC Amwell area control centre) by the Donlon/International\* meteorological watch office (YUDO) since 0001 UTC; the message is valid from 1215 UTC to 1600 UTC on the 22nd of the month; moderate mountain wave was observed at 1205 UTC at 48 degrees north and 10 degrees east at flight level 080; the mountain wave is expected to remain stationary and not to undergo any changes in intensity.

\* Fictitious locations

## 4.5 AERODROME WARNINGS

4.5.1 The purpose of aerodrome warnings is to give concise information of meteorological conditions which could adversely affect aircraft on the ground, including parked aircraft, and the aerodrome facilities and services. Aerodrome warnings are cancelled when the conditions prompting the warning are no longer occurring or no longer expected to occur at the aerodrome.

4.5.2 Aerodrome warnings are issued in accordance with the template provided in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-2, when required by operators and/or aerodrome services, and are disseminated in accordance with local arrangements to those concerned by the aerodrome meteorological office designated to provide service for that aerodrome. They normally relate to the occurrence or expected occurrence of one or more of the following phenomena:

- tropical cyclone (if the 10-minute mean surface wind speed at the aerodrome is expected to be 17 m/s (34 kt) or more)
- thunderstorm
- hail
- snow (including the expected or observed snow accumulation)
- freezing precipitation
- hoar frost or rime
- sandstorm
- duststorm
- rising sand or dust
- strong surface wind and gusts
- squall
- frost
- volcanic ash
- volcanic ash deposition
- toxic chemicals
- tsunami
- other phenomena as agreed locally.

*Note.— Aerodrome warnings related to the occurrence or expected occurrence of tsunami are not required where a national public safety plan for tsunami is integrated with the «at risk» aerodrome concerned.*

4.5.3 The use of text additional to the abbreviations given in the template referred to in 4.5.2 should be kept to a minimum. Any additional text should, as far as possible, be in abbreviated plain language. If no approved ICAO abbreviations are available, English plain-language text can be used.

4.5.4 Where quantitative criteria are required for the issue of aerodrome warnings, e.g. expected maximum wind or expected total snow fall, these are established as agreed between the aerodrome meteorological office and the users concerned.

## 4.6 WIND SHEAR WARNINGS AND ALERTS

4.6.1 Wind shear has been cited as a cause or contributory factor in a number of major aircraft accidents. At aerodromes where wind shear is considered to be a factor, it is therefore necessary to make arrangements, in addition to the inclusion of wind shear in the supplementary information of local routine reports, local special reports, METAR and SPECI, to provide all concerned with specific wind shear warnings, which would alert ATS units and, through them, the pilots, to the existence or expected existence of this hazardous phenomenon.

4.6.2 Evidence of the existence of wind shear should be derived from:

- a) ground-based wind shear remote-sensing equipment, e.g. Doppler radar;
- b) ground-based wind shear detection equipment, e.g. a system of surface wind and/or pressure sensors located in an array, monitoring a specific runway or runways and associated approach and departure paths;
- c) aircraft observations during the climb-out or approach phases of flight to be made in accordance with Chapter 7; and
- d) other meteorological information, e.g. from appropriate sensors located on existing masts or towers in the vicinity of the aerodrome or nearby areas of higher ground.

*Note.— Wind shear conditions are normally associated with one or more of the following phenomena:*

- *thunderstorms, microbursts, funnel clouds (tornado or waterspout) and gust fronts*
- *frontal surfaces*
- *strong surface winds coupled with local topography*
- *sea breeze fronts*
- *mountain waves (including low-level rotors in the terminal area)*
- *low-level temperature inversions.*

4.6.3 **Wind shear warnings** are prepared, by the aerodrome meteorological office designated to provide service for the aerodrome, in abbreviated plain language in accordance with the template in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-3. The objective of wind shear warnings is to give concise information on the observed or expected existence of wind shear which could adversely affect:

- a) aircraft on the approach path or take-off path or during circling approach between runway level and 500 m (1 600 ft) above that level or higher, where local topography produces operationally significant wind shear at greater heights; and
- b) aircraft on the runway during the landing roll and take-off run.

The wind shear warnings are disseminated to those concerned in accordance with local arrangements.

*Note.— The sequence number in the wind shear warning referred to in the template in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-3 corresponds to the number of such warnings issued for the aerodrome since 0001 UTC on the day concerned.*

4.6.4 When an aircraft report is used to prepare a wind shear warning or to confirm a warning previously issued, this report, including the aircraft type, is given unchanged in the warning.

*Note 1.— Following reported encounters by both arriving and departing aircraft, two different wind shear warnings may exist, one for arriving aircraft and one for departing aircraft.*

*Note 2.— Specifications for reporting the intensity of wind shear are still undergoing development. It is recognized, however, that pilots, when reporting wind shear, may use the qualifying terms “moderate”, “strong” or “severe”, based to a large extent on their subjective assessment of the intensity of the wind shear encountered. Such reports are incorporated unchanged in wind shear warnings.*

4.6.5 Wind shear warnings for arriving aircraft and/or departing aircraft are cancelled when aircraft reports indicate that wind shear no longer exists, or alternatively, after an agreed elapsed time. The criteria for the cancellation of a wind shear warning should be defined locally for each aerodrome, as agreed between the meteorological authority, the ATS authority and the operators concerned.

4.6.6 **Wind shear alerts** are generated at aerodromes where wind shear is detected by automated, ground-based, wind shear remote-sensing or detection equipment. Wind shear alerts give concise, up-to-date information related to the observed existence of wind shear involving a headwind/tailwind change of 7.5 m/s (15 kt) or more which could adversely affect aircraft on the final approach path or initial take-off path and aircraft on the runway during the landing roll and take-off run.

*Note.— Wind shear alerts can only be issued using automated equipment.*

4.6.7 Wind shear alerts are updated at least every minute; they are cancelled as soon as the headwind/tailwind component falls below 7.5 m/s (15 kt). The wind shear alerts, if possible, relate to specific sections of the runway and distances along the approach or take-off path as agreed between the meteorological authority, the ATS authority and the operators concerned.

4.6.8 Wind shear alerts are disseminated to those concerned from automated, ground-based, wind shear remote-sensing or detection equipment in accordance with local arrangements.

*Note 1.— Where microbursts are observed, reported by pilots or detected by ground-based wind shear detection or remote-sensing equipment, the wind shear warnings and wind shear alerts must include a reference to microbursts.*

*Note 2.— Guidance on the issuance of wind shear warnings and alerts is provided in the Manual on Low-level Wind Shear (Doc 9817).*

## 4.7 SPACE WEATHER ADVISORY INFORMATION

4.7.1 In its area of responsibility, space weather advisories should be disseminated to ACCs/FICs and aerodrome meteorological offices. In addition, the advisories should be supplied to other SWXCs and international OPMET databanks, international NOTAM offices and the centres responsible for AFS Internet-based services operation. Operators can obtain the advisory information through the AFS Internet-based services (Secure Aviation Data Information Service (SADIS) FTP and WAFS Internet File Service (WIFS)).



4.7.2 The detailed content and format of space weather advisory information are contained in Annex 3, Appendix 2, Table A2-3. The advisories are issued in abbreviated plain language using approved ICAO abbreviations. The order of information presented in the advisories is to be strictly adhered to. Example 4-4 shows a space weather advisory message. The advisories are also to be disseminated in IWXXM GML form.

*Note.— The technical specifications for IWXXM are contained in the Manual on Codes — International Codes (WMO-No. 306), Volume I.3, Part D — Representation Derived from Data Models. Guidance on the implementation of IWXXM is provided in the Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model (Doc 10003).*

4.7.3 Updates to space weather advisory information are issued as necessary, but at least every six hours until such time as the space weather phenomena are no longer detected and/or no longer expected to have an impact.

**Example 4-4. Advisory message for space weather**

```
SWX ADVISORY
DTG:                20161108/0100Z
SWXC:              DONLON
SWX EFFECT:       HF COM MOD AND GNSS MOD
ADVISORY NR:      2016/2
NR RPLC:          2016/1
OBS SWX:          20161108/0100Z HNH HSH E18000 — W18000
FCST SWX + 6 HR:  20161108/0700Z HNH HSH E18000 — W18000
FCST SWX + 12 HR: 20161108/1300Z HNH HSH E18000 — W18000
FCST SWX + 18 HR: 20161108/1900Z HNH HSH E18000 — W18000
FCST SWX + 24 HR: 20161109/0100Z HNH HSH E18000 — W18000
RMK:              LOW LVL GEOMAGNETIC STORMING CAUSING INCREASED
                  AURORAL ACT AND SUBSEQUENT MOD DEGRADATION OF GNSS
                  AND HF COM AVBL IN THE AURORAL ZONE. THIS STORMING EXP
                  TO SUBSIDE IN THE FCST PERIOD. SEE
                  WWW.SPACEWEATHERPROVIDER.WEB
NXT ADVISORY:     NO FURTHER ADVISORIES
```

*Note.— For the decode, see Annex 3, Appendix 2, Table A2-3.*



## Chapter 5

# METEOROLOGICAL SERVICE FOR OPERATORS AND FLIGHT CREW MEMBERS

### 5.1 GENERAL

5.1.1 Meteorological information is required by operators and flight crew members for:

- a) pre-flight planning by operators;
- b) in-flight re-planning by operators using centralized operational control of flight operations;
- c) use by flight crew members before departure;
- d) use by flight crew members in aircraft in flight.

*Note 1.— The provision of operational meteorological (OPMET) information to aircraft in flight is normally the responsibility of air traffic services (ATS) units. OPMET information supplied by meteorological offices/stations to ATS units is outlined in the Manual on Coordination between Air Traffic Services, Aeronautical Information Services and Aeronautical Meteorological Services (Doc 9377).*

*Note 2.— Details on the use of OPMET information in computer and manual flight planning by operators and flight crew members are given in Appendix F.*

5.1.2 The meteorological forecasts (TAF and trend forecasts) required to be provided for aerodromes by aerodrome meteorological offices are determined by regional air navigation agreement and are listed in the relevant electronic regional air navigation plan (eANP), Volume II, Part V, Table MET II-2. Factual information on all existing meteorological services is shown in the aeronautical information publications (AIPs) issued by individual States. These publications usually contain details of aerodrome meteorological offices and the services provided by them, together with the address of the meteorological authority responsible for the provision of meteorological information. For aerodromes without an aerodrome meteorological office, the AIPs give the address and the telephone number of the office responsible for the provision of the necessary meteorological information.

*Note.— Detailed specifications concerning presentation and contents of the aeronautical information publication is provided in the Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Aeronautical Information Management (PANS-AIM (Doc 10066)), Appendix 2.*

5.1.3 The meteorological services provided may include briefing/consultation and display or provision of flight documentation. When such services are desired, the operator or flight crew member must notify the aerodrome meteorological office concerned in sufficient time to allow that office to prepare the information required and, as necessary, to obtain information from world area forecast centres (WAFCs) and other meteorological offices. The notice should include such details as:

- a) aerodrome of departure and estimated time of departure;

- b) destination and estimated time of arrival;
- c) route to be flown and estimated times of arrival at, and departure from, any intermediate aerodrome(s);
- d) alternate aerodromes needed to complete the operational flight plan;
- e) cruising level(s);
- f) type of flight, whether under visual or instrument flight rules;
- g) type of meteorological information requested, i.e. whether flight documentation and/or briefing or consultation; and
- h) time(s) at which briefings, consultations and/or flight documentation are required.

*Note.— In the case of scheduled flights, the requirement for some or all of this information may be waived as agreed between the aerodrome meteorological office and the operator concerned. In such cases, operators or flight crew members must keep the meteorological authority or the aerodrome meteorological office concerned informed of any changes in schedules, or plans for non-scheduled flights.*

5.1.4 Meteorological information is supplied to operators and flight crew members by one or more of the following means, as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned (the order shown does not imply priority):

- a) written or printed material, including specified charts and forms;
- b) data in the GRIB and BUFR code forms, and/or in IWXXM GML form;
- c) briefing;
- d) consultation;
- e) display; or
- f) in lieu of a) to e) above, by means of automated pre-flight information systems providing self-briefing and flight documentation facilities while retaining access by operators and flight crew members to consultation, as necessary, with the aerodrome meteorological office.

5.1.5 The meteorological authority must determine in consultation with the operator the type and format of the meteorological information to be provided and the methods and means of its provision.

5.1.6 The meteorological information to be provided to operators and flight crew members includes the following information, as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned:

- a) forecasts of:
  - 1) upper wind and upper-air temperatures;
  - 2) upper-air humidity;
  - 3) geopotential altitude of flight levels;

- 4) flight level and temperature of tropopause;
- 5) direction, speed and flight level of maximum wind;
- 6) CB clouds;
- 7) icing;
- 8) turbulence; and
- 9) SIGWX phenomena;

*Note 1.— Forecasts of upper-air humidity, geopotential altitude of flight levels, CB clouds, icing and turbulence are used only in automatic flight planning and need not be displayed. However, if necessary, forecasts of CB clouds, icing and turbulence may be visualized according to the specific thresholds relevant to user operations.*

*Note 2. – Turbulence listed under 8) above encompasses all types of turbulence, including clear air and in-cloud turbulence.*

*Note 3.— When supplied in chart form, forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature are fixed-time prognostic charts for flight levels as specified in 3.7.2.2.*

*Note 4.— When supplied in chart form, forecasts of SIGWX phenomena are fixed-time prognostic high-level (SWH) and medium-level (SWM) charts which are for an atmospheric layer limited by flight levels as specified in 3.7.3.5 and/or low-level (SWL) charts for flight levels below FL 100.*

- b) METAR or SPECI (including trend forecasts as issued in accordance with regional air navigation agreement) for the aerodromes of departure and intended landing, and for take-off, en-route and destination alternate aerodromes;
- c) TAF or amended TAF for the aerodromes of departure and intended landing, and for take-off, en-route and destination alternate aerodromes;
- d) forecasts for take-off;
- e) SIGMET information and appropriate special air-reports relevant to the whole route;

*Note.— Appropriate special air-reports are those not already used in preparation of SIGMET information.*

- f) volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisory information relevant to the whole route;
- g) in accordance with regional air navigation agreement, GAMET area forecasts and/or area forecasts for low-level flights in chart form prepared in support of the issuance of AIRMET information and AIRMET information for low-level flights relevant to the whole route;
- h) aerodrome warnings for the local aerodrome;
- i) meteorological satellite images;
- j) ground-based weather radar information; and
- k) space weather advisory information relevant to the whole route.

5.1.7 Forecasts listed under 5.1.6 a) 1) to 9) are to be generated from the digital forecasts provided by WAFCs in the GRIB and BUFR code forms whenever these forecasts cover the intended flight path in respect of time, altitude and geographical extent, unless otherwise agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned.

*Note.— Since no forecasts of SIGWX phenomena for the layer from ground to FL 100 are issued by WAFCs, such forecasts, where required for flight planning, briefing, consultation or display, would have to be prepared by the meteorological offices concerned.*

5.1.8 When forecasts are identified as being originated by WAFCs, the meteorological authority must ensure that no modifications are made to their meteorological content. Furthermore, charts generated from the forecasts provided by WAFCs are to be made available for fixed areas of coverage as shown in Annex 3, Appendix 8 whenever required by operators.

5.1.9 The information listed in 5.1.6 should cover the flight in respect of time, altitude and geographical extent up to the aerodrome of intended landing. It should also cover the meteorological conditions expected between the aerodrome of intended landing and en-route and destination alternate aerodromes as required by the operator.

5.1.10 Forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature, and SIGWX phenomena above FL 100, requested for pre-flight planning and in-flight re-planning by the operator, are to be supplied as soon as they become available, but not later than three hours before departure; other meteorological information should be supplied as soon as is practicable.

5.1.11 Meteorological information is to be supplied to operators and flight crew members at the location and time agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned. The service for pre-flight planning should be limited to flights originating within the territory of the State concerned.

5.1.12 For helicopter operations to offshore structures, pre-flight planning and in-flight re-planning information should include data from sea level to FL 100. The data will need to cover surface visibility, the amount, type (when available) and height of the base and top of cloud below FL 100, sea state and sea surface temperature, mean sea-level pressure, turbulence and icing. Details of the requirements in this regard vary from region to region and are therefore determined by regional air navigation agreement. Where available, AIRMET information and the area forecasts issued for these types of operations should also be provided to operators for flight planning purposes.

5.1.13 For low-level operations, including those in accordance with visual flight rules, the pre-flight planning and in-flight re-planning information on en-route conditions should cover the layer from ground to FL 100 or up to FL 150 or more in mountainous areas. The information should include en-route weather phenomena given in Annex 3, Appendix 5, Table A5-3. In view of this, AIRMET information is of particular importance in planning low-level flights.

## 5.2 BRIEFING, CONSULTATION AND DISPLAY

5.2.1 A briefing or consultation is provided on request to flight crew members or other flight operations personnel. A briefing consists of an oral commentary, either directly by a person at the departure aerodrome or by telephone or other suitable telecommunication means from the aerodrome meteorological office (which was notified of the flight and which issued the flight documentation), or through self-briefing computer terminals. A consultation consists of a personal discussion, including questions and answers. The purpose of the briefing or consultation is to supply the latest available information outlined in 5.1.6 on existing and expected meteorological conditions along the whole route, at the aerodrome of intended landing and at any destination alternate aerodromes. Briefing and consultation are given either to explain or amplify the contents of the flight documentation or, as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned, to waive the need for providing flight documentation.

5.2.2 To assist flight crew members and others concerned with the preparation of a flight, and for use in a briefing or consultation, aerodrome meteorological offices display any or all of the information listed in 5.1.6. Meteorological information can also be displayed for users by means of various self-briefing or meteorological information systems (see 5.4).

*Note.— A list of abbreviations and their decodes, which should be used in phraseologies in a briefing or consultation, is given in Appendix G.*

5.2.3 If during the briefing the aerodrome meteorological office expresses an opinion on the development of meteorological conditions at an aerodrome which differs appreciably from the TAF included in flight documentation, the attention of flight crew members is to be drawn to the divergence. The portion of the briefing dealing with the divergence must be recorded at the time of briefing, and this record should be made available to the operator.

## 5.3 FLIGHT DOCUMENTATION

### 5.3.1 Presentation of flight documentation

5.3.1.1 Flight documentation is written or printed information that is provided to flight crew members before take-off and which they take with them on the flight. It should comprise information listed under 5.1.6 a) 1) to 9), b), c), e), f) and, if appropriate, g) and k). However, flight documentation for flights of two hours' duration or less, after a short stop or turnaround, may be limited to only the information operationally needed, as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned; in all cases, however, the flight documentation should comprise information on at least 5.1.6 b), c), e), f) and, if appropriate, g) and k).

5.3.1.2 The interpretation of satellite and weather radar imagery requires expert knowledge which can be imparted during a briefing. Furthermore, such imagery relates to a fixed time and cannot be used as a forecast. For these reasons such imagery should not be included in flight documentation.

5.3.1.3 Model charts and forms for use in the preparation of flight documentation are included in Annex 3, Appendix 1. Flight documentation related to forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature and SIGWX phenomena is to be presented in the form of charts. For low-level flights, alternatively, GAMET area forecasts (which are in abbreviated plain language) can be used. METAR and SPECI (including trend forecasts as issued in accordance with regional air navigation agreement), TAF, GAMET, SIGMET, AIRMET (in accordance with regional air navigation agreement) and tropical cyclone, volcanic ash and space weather advisories are to be presented using the templates contained in Annex 3, Appendices 1, 2, 3, 5 and 6. METAR, SPECI, TAF, GAMET, SIGMET and AIRMET, and tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisories received from other meteorological offices and the tropical cyclone and volcanic ash advisory centres must be included in flight documentation without change. The format of flight documentation is summarized in Table 5-1.

5.3.1.4 The forms and the legend of charts included in flight documentation are printed in English, French, Russian or Spanish; they should, wherever practicable, be completed in the language requested by the operator, preferably using one of those languages. The units of measurement for each element used in flight documentation should be in compliance with Annex 5 — *Units of Measurement to be Used in Air and Ground Operations* and indicated for each element. The location indicators and abbreviations used should be explained in flight documentation.

**Table 5-1. Format of flight documentation**

<i>Type of Operation</i>	<i>Medium- or high-level flight (above FL 100)</i>		<i>Low-level flights (up to FL 100)</i>	
	<i>Chart form</i>	<i>Abbreviated plain language</i>	<i>Chart form</i>	<i>Abbreviated plain language</i>
<i>Forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature</i>	WAFS chart(s)	—	National/regional charts for the following altitudes: 600, 1 500 and 3 000 m (2 000, 5 000 and 10 000 ft)	GAMET area forecast
<i>Forecasts of SIGWX</i>	WAFS chart(s)	—	National/regional low-level charts	GAMET area forecast
<i>Aerodrome reports</i>	—	METAR/SPECI	—	METAR/SPECI
<i>Aerodrome forecasts</i>	—	TAF	—	TAF
<i>En-route warnings</i>	SIGMET	SIGMET	SIGMET	SIGMET, AIRMET
<i>En-route advisories</i>	Volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisories	Volcanic ash, tropical cyclone and space weather advisories	Volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisories	Volcanic ash, tropical cyclone and space weather advisories

5.3.1.5 The height in relation to aerodrome meteorological conditions (e.g. in METAR/SPECI and TAF) is always given as height above official aerodrome elevation. On charts and forms related to en-route meteorological conditions, the expression of height in terms of flight levels is preferred, but pressure or altitude or, for low-level flights, height above ground level may also be used. On such charts and forms, the height indication used is always to be indicated.

*Note.— Specifications for charts included in flight documentation (size, depiction of geographical features and grids, labels, etc.) are given in Annex 3, Appendix 8. Examples of charts and forms included in flight documentation are also shown in Annex 3, Appendix 1. The appendix also includes the MODEL SN containing a comprehensive set of important explanatory material relating to charts, symbols, units of measurement, and abbreviations contained in flight documentation. This model should, therefore, be supplied or made available to flight crew members and/or operators with flight documentation.*

5.3.1.6 Copies of flight documentation should be retained, either as printed copies or as computer files, by the issuing meteorological authority for at least 30 days.

### 5.3.2 Updates to flight documentation

Whenever it becomes apparent that OPMET information to be included in flight documentation will differ materially from that made available for pre-flight planning and in-flight re-planning, the operator is to be advised and, if practicable, be



supplied with updated information, as agreed between the aerodrome meteorological office and the operator concerned. Should a need for amendment arise after the flight documentation has been supplied and before the aircraft has taken off, arrangements should exist by which the aerodrome meteorological office can issue the necessary updated information to the operator or to the local ATS unit for transmission to the aircraft. In cases of unusual delays, completely new flight documentation may be requested by the flight crew from the aerodrome meteorological office concerned.

### 5.3.3 Forecasts of en-route conditions

5.3.3.1 Charts displaying the forecast en-route meteorological conditions to be included in flight documentation are to be generated from the forecasts provided by WAFCS in the BUFR code (or alternatively IWXXM GML form), and GRIB code forms whenever these forecasts cover the intended flight path in respect of time, altitude and geographical extent. This implies that meteorological authorities have the obligation to ensure that WAFS forecasts be provided as flight documentation for any operator that requires them. Additionally, to meet the requirements of long-haul flights, route-specific concatenated upper wind and upper-air temperature forecasts should be provided when agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned (see 3.7.4).

5.3.3.2 WAFS charts issued as flight documentation for flights between FL 250 and FL 630 must include a SWH chart and a forecast chart of upper wind and upper-air temperature for the level of 250 hPa as a minimum. The SWM chart, issued in accordance with regional air navigation agreement for limited geographical areas, is to be included in flight documentation for flights between FL 100 and FL 250. The actual WAFS upper wind and upper-air temperature charts and SIGWX charts to be included in flight documentation are determined on the basis of agreements between the meteorological authorities and the users concerned. Guidance on the choice of charts to be included in flight documentation is given in Table 5-2.

**Table 5-2. Optimum set of forecasts of WAFS upper wind, upper-air temperature and SIGWX phenomena to be supplied as flight documentation**

<i>Type of flight</i> <i>WAFS forecast of</i>	<i>High-level</i> <i>(above FL 250)</i>	<i>Medium-level</i> <i>(from FL 100 to FL 250)</i>
<i>upper wind and upper-air temperature for</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 250 hPa</li> <li>• pressure level closest to the actual flight level (if not 250 hPa)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 500 hPa</li> <li>• pressure level closest to the actual flight level (if not 500 hPa)</li> </ul>
<i>SIGWX</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SWH</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SWM</li> </ul>

5.3.3.3 No amendments are issued by WAFCS to any of their forecasts (i.e. forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature, and of SIGWX phenomena). However, in the case of WAFS forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature, a newly issued forecast automatically cancels the corresponding forecast issued six hours earlier and in the case of WAFS SIGWX forecasts, corrections (due to errors introduced at the time of their production) are issued (see 3.7.3.8).

5.3.3.4 All WAFS forecasts are provided as fixed-time prognostic charts in the flight documentation (see 5.1.6 a), Notes 3 and 4). Nevertheless, it may be considered that the fixed-time upper wind and upper-air temperature charts are usable for flights from one and half hours before their validity time until one and half hours after their validity time, e.g. a WAFS upper wind forecast valid at 1200 UTC could be used for all flights between 1030 and 1330 UTC while

the fixed time SIGWX charts are usable for flights from three hours before their validity time until three hours after their validity time, e.g. a WAFS SIGWX forecast valid at 1200 UTC could be used for all flights between 0900 and 1500 UTC. Ideally, flights with flying times exceeding three hours would thus require flight documentation for more than one validity time. Accordingly, a flight with a flying time of seven hours (from 1200 to 1900 UTC) would require upper wind and upper-air temperature charts for three validity times (i.e. 1200, 1500 and 1800 UTC) and SIGWX forecasts for two validity times (i.e. 1200 and 1800 UTC). The actual flight documentation to be provided should be established by the meteorological authority in consultation with the operator concerned.

5.3.3.5 Flight documentation for low-level flights can be provided either in chart form (i.e. a combination of a low-level SIGWX forecast, and an upper wind and upper-air temperature forecast) or in abbreviated plain language (i.e. GAMET), as indicated in Table 5-1. Irrespective of the presentation, the forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature are to be provided for points separated no more than 500 km (300 NM) and for at least the following altitudes: 600, 1 500 and 3 000 m (2 000, 5 000 and 10 000 ft) and 4 500 m (15 000 ft) in mountainous areas. When a route to be flown involves the use of both GAMET and a combination of low-level SIGWX forecast and an upper wind and upper-air temperature forecast, the users' attention should be drawn to the differences in the information content in these forecasts. They are listed in Table 5-3.

*Note 1.— SIGMET information is to be included in flight documentation in both cases.*

*Note 2.— The en-route forecasts for low-level flights are prepared by aerodrome meteorological offices as agreed locally or in accordance with regional air navigation agreement. This applies particularly for the regions where AIRMET information is to be issued by regional air navigation agreement. In these regions, the GAMET forecasts or low-level SIGWX forecasts are prepared in support of the issuance of AIRMET information, and SIGMET and AIRMET information relevant to the flight concerned is to be included in flight documentation for low-level flights.*

**Table 5-3. Differences in the information contained in GAMET and the combination of low-level SIGWX forecast and an upper wind and upper-air temperature forecast**

<i>Type of forecast</i>	<i>Information on</i>	<i>Phenomena already included in a SIGMET</i>	<i>Forecast QNH</i>
<i>GAMET</i>		No	Yes
<i>Combination of low-level SIGWX and upper wind and upper-air temperature forecast</i>		Yes	No

## 5.4 AUTOMATED PRE-FLIGHT INFORMATION SYSTEMS

5.4.1 Centralization and automation on the part of meteorological authorities prompted the development and implementation of automated pre-flight information systems. Pre-flight information, self-briefing, consultation and flight documentation can be obtained by flight crew members, operators and other flight operations personnel through an automated pre-flight information system. These systems must enable these users to consult, as necessary, with the aerodrome meteorological office by telephone or other suitable telecommunications means. The meteorological information to be displayed in aerodrome meteorological offices can also be made available to users through these systems. Some of these systems serve the above purposes exclusively while others allow for the provision of an integrated information system, which may not be confined to the meteorological part of pre-flight planning. Many systems assist users by providing a harmonized, common-point access to aeronautical information services (AIS) and meteorological (MET) pre-flight information. Automated pre-flight information systems may form part of a multi-purpose aeronautical or public information system.

5.4.2 Meteorological information and services supplied to users through an automated pre-flight information system must comply with Annex 3 provisions.

5.4.3 The automated pre-flight information systems are to:

- a) provide for continuous updating of the system database and the monitoring of the validity and integrity of the meteorological information stored;
- b) permit access to the system by operators, flight crew members and other aeronautical users concerned through suitable telecommunication means (including public communications, such as telephone, fax, Internet and data networks);
- c) use access and interrogation procedures based on abbreviated plain language, ICAO location indicators, WMO aeronautical meteorological code data-type designators, or a menu-driven interface or other mechanisms, as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned; and
- d) provide for rapid response to user requests for information.

5.4.4 Where AIS/MET automated pre-flight information systems are established and used, the full responsibility for quality control and quality management of the OPMET information processed and supplied rests with the meteorological authority/authorities concerned, through all levels of processing up to the supply of the data to users. The same applies to the AIS authority/authorities designated by a State or States for the AIS data processed and supplied by such systems. The information to be supplied through such systems to the personnel involved in pre-flight planning, i.e. its quality, geographical and spatial coverage, format, content, validity, time and the frequency of supply, must be in conformity with the relevant provisions of Annex 3 and Annex 15 — *Aeronautical Information Services*.

## 5.5 INFORMATION FOR AIRCRAFT IN FLIGHT

Meteorological information for aircraft in flight (VOLMET) is supplied by a meteorological office to its associated ATS unit and then to the pilot through ground-to-air communications, including direct controller-to-pilot communications, and through D-VOLMET or VOLMET broadcasts as determined by regional air navigation agreement (see also 6.5). VOLMET is to be supplied on request, as agreed between the meteorological authority and the operator concerned, by the aerodrome meteorological office or the MWO which receives the request with the assistance, as necessary, of another aerodrome meteorological office or MWO. Meteorological information may be disseminated in graphical format. General guidelines for the display of such information in the cockpit are provided in Appendix H of this manual.

---



## Chapter 6

### DISSEMINATION OF OPMET INFORMATION

*Introductory Note.— Provisions in this chapter dealing with the air traffic services (ATS) message handling system (AMHS) go beyond the current provisions in Annex 3. They have been included in this manual for information only. It may be expected that a draft amendment to Annex 3 will be prepared in due course, in order to accommodate the use of the AMHS for the dissemination of OPMET information.*

#### 6.1 GENERAL

6.1.1 Efficient telecommunications are essential for the speedy dissemination of operational meteorological (OPMET) information to all users. Suitable telecommunication facilities must therefore be available at aerodromes to ensure rapid communications (direct speech within approximately 15 seconds) between aerodrome meteorological offices and, as necessary, aeronautical meteorological stations and to allow these offices and stations to supply the necessary OPMET information to air traffic services (ATS) units, operators and other aeronautical users at the aerodrome. Automatic telecommunication and information systems, telephones and teletypewriters are used for this purpose. If used between aerodrome meteorological offices, meteorological watch offices and ATS units, telephones should allow contact with the required points within 15 seconds (even if switchboards are used), and printed communications within five minutes, including any necessary retransmission.

6.1.2 For the dissemination of OPMET information beyond the aerodrome, the aeronautical fixed telecommunication network (AFTN), air traffic services (ATS) message handling system (AMHS) and the aeronautical fixed service (AFS) Internet-based services (see 6.2 and 6.3, respectively) are the primary communication means. These form part of the AFS, which embraces all telecommunication systems used for international air navigation, except ground-to-air transmissions.

6.1.3 In addition, the Internet may be used for the exchange of non-time-critical OPMET information (see 6.3). ICAO international OPMET databanks, which can be accessed through the AFTN or AMHS support inter-regional and regional exchanges and dissemination of OPMET information. In accordance with the principles for the planning of OPMET exchanges (endorsed by the Communications/Meteorology Divisional Meeting (1982) held conjointly with the Seventh Session of the World Meteorological Organization (WMO) Commission for Aeronautical Meteorology), the OPMET data exchange system should make use of a limited number of international databanks; the number and location of these databanks and the areas to be served by them should be established by regional air navigation agreement. Seven international OPMET databanks have been established by regional air navigation agreement in Brasilia, Brussels, Dakar, Pretoria, Toulouse, Vienna and Washington. In addition, five OPMET databanks in Bangkok, Brisbane, Nadi, Singapore and Tokyo have been designated to support the Regional OPMET Bulletin Exchange (ROBEX) scheme (see 6.2.6) in the ICAO ASIA/PAC and MID Regions.

6.1.4 Some concern has been expressed by a number of States regarding the use of OPMET information for non-aviation purposes. Guidelines for access to aeronautical meteorological information (i.e. OPMET information) have been developed by ICAO, in coordination with World Meteorological Organization (WMO) and are given in Appendix I.

## 6.2 DISSEMINATION OF OPMET INFORMATION ON THE AFTN AND AMHS

6.2.1 OPMET information is transmitted on the AFS. The AMHS is being used wherever this system has been implemented; in other areas, OPMET information continues to be transmitted on the AFTN.

6.2.2 OPMET information in alphanumeric format is transmitted on the AFTN (and on most other networks including the public Internet) in the form of “bulletins”, each bulletin containing one or more METAR, TAF or other types of information (but always only one type per bulletin) and the appropriate bulletin heading. The heading is essential to permit recognition by users and data handlers, including computers, of type, time and origin of the data contained in the bulletin. It should not be confused with the “AFTN message heading” which determines priority, routing and other telecommunication aspects of the message. All meteorological bulletins transmitted via the AFTN have to be “encapsulated” into the text part of the AFTN message format.

6.2.3 OPMET information in IWXXM GML form will be collated into bulletins, compressed and then transmitted on an AMHS connection with File Transfer Body Part (FTBP) enabled. Each bulletin will contain one or more METAR, TAF or other types of OPMET information (but always only one type per bulletin), together with the appropriate “bulletin” heading tags. The heading is essential to permit recognition by users and data handlers, including computers, of type, time and origin of the data contained in the bulletin.

*Note.— Details concerning the AFTN message format and AMHS protocol are given in Annex 10 — Aeronautical Telecommunications, Volume II — Communication Procedures, including those with PANS status. Additional guidance on the exchange of OPMET information using IWXXM GML form is presented in the Guidelines for the implementation of OPMET Data Exchange Using IWXXM ”, available on the ICAO Meteorology Panel (METP) and WMO websites.*

6.2.4 The meteorological “bulletin” abbreviated heading depends on its format, i.e. the heading is either in alphanumeric format or in IWXXM GML form.

6.2.5 In alphanumeric format, the meteorological bulletin abbreviated heading consists of a single line, precedes the OPMET information contained in the bulletin, and normally comprises three groups as follows:

- a) an identifier;
- b) an ICAO location indicator;
- c) a date-time group; and
- d) if necessary, a fourth group as an identifier for a delayed, corrected or amended bulletin.

The meaning of these four groups is as follows:

- The identifier comprises four letters and two figures: the first and second letters are the data-type designators, the third and fourth letters are the geographical designators, and the figures are added to identify two or more bulletins originated by the same centre. The data designators are:

SA	METAR including trend forecasts, if provided
SP	SPECI including trend forecasts, if provided
FT	TAF valid for 12 hours or more
FC	TAF valid for less than 12 hours
WA	AIRMET information
WS	SIGMET information

WC	SIGMET information for tropical cyclones
WV	SIGMET information for volcanic ash
FK	Tropical cyclone advisory information
FV	Volcanic ash advisory information
UA	Air-report (AIREP)
FA	GAMET forecasts

**Example.**— SAZB02 = Second of two bulletins containing routine reports in the METAR code form (SA) from Zambia (ZB).

*Note.*— A complete list of geographical designators is given in the Manual on the Global Telecommunication System (WMO-No. 386); the data designators listed above are taken from the same WMO publication.

- The ICAO location indicator consists of four letters (e.g. YUDO [fictitious location]) and identifies the aerodrome meteorological office that compiled the bulletin. The complete list of location indicators is published in *Location Indicators* (Doc 7910).
- The date-time group consists of six figures, the first two figures indicating the day of the month and the next four figures indicating:
  - for METAR and SPECI, the time of observation in UTC;
  - for TAF, the full hour in UTC (of which the last two figures are always 00) preceding the transmission time; for other forecasts, the standard time of observation in UTC on which the forecast is based;
  - for other OPMET bulletins, such as SIGMET information, the time of origin in UTC of the text of the bulletin(s).

**Example.**— 151200 = METAR based on observations made on the 15th of the month at 1200 UTC.

*Note.*— In the case of bulletins, the time of observation of each report needs to be clearly identified.

- If necessary, the abbreviated heading may include a fourth group consisting of three letters to identify delayed (RRA), corrected (CCA) or amended (AAA) bulletins. If additional delayed, corrected or amended bulletins are necessary, they should be identified by RRB, RRC, etc.; CCB, CCC, etc.; and AAB, AAC, etc.

**Example.**— A complete heading will be as follows:

SAZB02 YUDO 151200 RRA = Delayed second of two bulletins of METAR code form for 1200 UTC on the 15th from Zambia, compiled by YUDO.\*

\* Fictitious location

6.2.6 In IWXXM GML form, the first two letters in the meteorological “bulletin” header are as follows:

LA	METAR including trend forecasts, if provided
LP	SPECI including trend forecasts, if provided
LT	TAF valid for 12 hours or more
LC	TAF valid for less than 12 hours
LW	AIRMET information
LS	SIGMET information
LY	SIGMET information for tropical cyclones
LV	SIGMET information for volcanic ash
LK	Tropical cyclone advisory information
LU	Volcanic ash advisory information
LN	Space weather advisory information

*Note.*— Other elements related to the IWXXM GML form can be found in WMO-No.306, Volume I.3, Part D — Representations derived from data models.

6.2.7 Bulletins containing OPMET information and disseminated on the AFTN and AMHS are given priorities depending on their urgency; warnings (SIGMET information), amendments to forecasts, and other meteorological information of immediate concern to aircraft in flight or about to depart are given a relatively high priority; next are METAR, TAF, and other messages exchanged between aerodrome meteorological offices.

*Note.*— Details concerning message priorities on the AFTN and AMHS are given in Annex 10, Volume II and in the Technical Specifications for ATN using ISO/OSI Standards and Protocols (Doc 9880), Part II — Ground-Ground Applications — Air Traffic Services Message Handling Services (ATSMHS).

6.2.8 Messages containing OPMET information should be filed promptly for transmission on the AFS. METAR and SPECI are normally filed within five minutes of the time of the observation, and TAF not earlier than one hour prior to the beginning of their validity period.

6.2.9 The time interval between the time of filing and the time of receipt of a message is called the “transit” time. Messages containing OPMET information transmitted on the AFS should have transit times of less than five minutes.

6.2.10 In some regions, special collection and dissemination systems have been designed for the more efficient handling of OPMET information exchanged on AFS, such as ROBEX in the ICAO ASIA/PAC and MID Regions; the Africa-Indian Ocean Meteorological Bulletin Exchange (AMBEX) in the ICAO AFI Region; and the Regional OPMET Data Exchange (RODEX) in the ICAO EUR Region.



### 6.3 DISSEMINATION OF OPMET INFORMATION ON THE INTERNET

*Note.— Since the public Internet has become increasingly reliable for dissemination of data, it can be used to exchange non-time-critical OPMET information including WAFS forecasts subject to its availability and satisfactory operational performance. In this context, any OPMET information (including WAFS forecasts) used for flight planning can be considered non-time critical and therefore disseminated over the public Internet. Guidance on the use of the public Internet is available in the Guidelines on the Use of the Public Internet for Aeronautical Applications (Doc 9855).*

6.3.1 A global set of OPMET information and world area forecast system (WAFS) forecasts are made available through the AFS Internet-based services (SADIS FTP and WIFS operated by WAFC London and WAFC Washington, respectively) to meteorological offices. Where the necessary arrangements have been made, the service may also be available to other users, such as ATS units and operators. The WAFS forecasts available through the AFS Internet-based services are in the GRIB code form, comprising forecasts of upper wind and upper-air temperature, humidity, tropopause heights and temperatures, maximum winds, CB clouds, icing, turbulence and geopotential altitude data, as well as SIGWX forecasts in the BUFR code form.

6.3.2 The reception of WAFS forecasts through the AFS Internet-based services provides excellent reliability and quality of information for relatively low cost. States that have not already done so are therefore encouraged to arrange for the access to the AFS Internet-based services. The procedures and conditions concerning authorized access to AFS Internet-based services are given in Appendix A.

*Note.— For details on the methods to be used in the various ICAO regions for the exchange of OPMET information, see the relevant electronic regional air navigation plan (eANP), Volume II. Details on regional networks or systems for the exchange of OPMET information are published by ICAO regional offices on a regular basis.*

### 6.4 INTERROGATION PROCEDURES FOR INTERNATIONAL OPMET DATABANKS

6.4.1 In addition to the dissemination means described in 6.2 and 6.3, OPMET information can also be obtained by interrogation of one of the ICAO OPMET databanks. This is done by means of a standardized message which triggers the automatic retrieval of the requested information and its immediate transmission to the originator. In general, the automatic retrieval provides the user with the most recent information available.

6.4.2 In order to be accepted by the databank, the interrogation message must be in agreement with the following principles:

- a) it must contain the proper AFTN address used for interrogation to receive data in alphanumeric format, and the proper AMHS address used for interrogation to receive data in IWXXM GML form; and
- b) only one line of interrogation (69 characters of text) is allowed to receive data in alphanumeric format.

6.4.3 The standard interrogation for one message must include the elements listed below in the following order:

- a) "RQM/" indicating the start of a data request line for alphanumeric data, and "RQX/" indicating the start of a data request line for data in IWXXM GML form;
- b) data-type identifier;

- c) four-letter ICAO location indicator; and
- d) equal sign (=) indicating the end of the interrogation line, e.g. RQM/SAKMIA=.

6.4.4 The accepted data-type designators are as given in 6.2.2. Some of the data types listed in that paragraph may not be available in all the international OPMET databanks.

6.4.5 The following special interrogation procedures are available if more than one message is needed:

- a) the same data type may be requested for a number of meteorological offices/stations without repeating the data-type identifier. The location indicators have to be separated by commas (,) which indicate the continuation of the request for the same type of data, e.g. for alphanumeric data RQM/SAEHAM,EHRD=;
- b) various data types may be interrogated in the same message using the oblique (/) as a separator, e.g. for data in IWXXM GML form RQX/LAKMIA/LTKMIA=.

6.4.6 There are additional features used for interrogation that are not available in all the international OPMET databanks. These are described in detail in the catalogues of OPMET data available at the OPMET databanks, prepared and updated on a regular basis by the ICAO regional offices concerned. It should be noted that some international OPMET databanks restrict access to one authorized user per State, and the computer will not respond to an unauthorized interrogation.

## 6.5 DISSEMINATION OF OPMET INFORMATION TO AIRCRAFT IN FLIGHT

6.5.1 The transmission of OPMET information to aircraft in flight is the responsibility of the ATS units. Details on the meteorological information provided to aircraft in flight can be found in the *Manual on Coordination between Air Traffic Services, Aeronautical Information Services and Aeronautical Meteorological Services* (Doc 9377).

6.5.2 Meteorological information for aircraft in flight (VOLMET) broadcasts by VHF or HF voice communications, and D-VOLMET by data link, are parts of aeronautical mobile service communications. Both communication systems are established and operated in States, usually by the ATS authorities, in accordance with regional air navigation agreement. Depending on these agreements, METAR, SPECI (including trend forecasts, where required) and TAF (including amendments thereof) prepared by aerodrome meteorological offices and SIGMET information prepared by meteorological watch offices are supplied through these telecommunications systems to aircraft in flight. Details relating to the cooperation of the meteorological and ATS authorities in the provision of the services are dealt with in Doc 9377. The standard radiotelephony phraseologies to be used in VOLMET broadcasts by voice communication are given in Appendix 1 to that manual.

*Note.— The following data link services of the data link flight information service (D-FIS) application should be used for the provision of OPMET information to aircraft in flight: D-METAR service, D-TAF service, D-SIGMET service. For details on these data link services, see the Manual of Air Traffic Services Data Link Applications (Doc 9694).*

---

## Chapter 7

# AIRCRAFT OBSERVATIONS AND REPORTS

### 7.1 GENERAL

There are two kinds of aircraft observations as listed below and discussed in detail in the following paragraphs:

- a) routine aircraft observations during en-route and climb-out phases of the flight; and
- b) special and other non-routine aircraft observations during any phase of the flight.

### 7.2 REPORTING OF AIRCRAFT OBSERVATIONS DURING FLIGHT

7.2.1 Aircraft observations are to be reported using the following means:

- a) *air-ground data link*. This is the preferred mode of reporting, applicable both for routine and special and other non-routine aircraft observations; and
- b) *voice communication*. This is to be used only if the air-ground data link is not available or appropriate and is applicable only for special and other non-routine aircraft observations.

7.2.2 Aircraft observations are to be reported during flight at the time the observation is made or as soon thereafter as is practicable.

### 7.3 ROUTINE AIRCRAFT OBSERVATIONS

#### 7.3.1 Frequency of reporting

When air-ground data link is used and automatic dependent surveillance-contract (ADS-C) or secondary surveillance radar (SSR) Mode S is being applied, automatic routine observations are made every 15 minutes during the en-route phase and every 30 seconds during the climb-out phase for the first 10 minutes of the flight. When only voice communications are available, no routine meteorological observations by aircraft are made. For helicopter operations to and from aerodromes on offshore structures, routine observations are to be made from helicopters at points and times as agreed between the meteorological authority and the helicopter operator concerned.

#### 7.3.2 Exemptions from reporting

As indicated in 7.3.1, an aircraft not equipped with air-ground data link is exempted from making routine observations, i.e. when voice communications are used, no routine aircraft observations are required.

*Note.— When air-ground data link is used, no exemptions are to be applied.*

### 7.3.3 Designation procedures

In the case of air routes with high-density air traffic (e.g. organized tracks), an aircraft from among the aircraft operating at each flight level shall be designated, at approximately hourly intervals, to make routine observations in accordance with the frequency specified in 7.3.1. These designation procedures for the en-route phase of the flight are prescribed by regional air navigation agreement and only applicable when air-ground data link is used. In the case of the requirement to report during the climb-out phase, an aircraft is to be designated, at approximately hourly intervals, at each aerodrome to make routine observations in accordance with 7.3.1. The details concerning the required frequency to make routine aircraft observations and the associated designation procedures are shown in Table 7-1.

*Note.— Details on designation procedures for the en-route phase of the flight are contained in the Regional Supplementary Procedures (Doc 7030), Chapter 12 — Meteorology.*

**Table 7-1. Frequency and associated designation procedures of routine aircraft observations through air-ground data link**

	<i>En-route phase</i>		<i>Climb-out phase (terminal area)</i>
	<i>Low-density traffic</i>	<i>High-density traffic</i>	
	<i>All aircraft</i>	<i>Designated aircraft</i>	<i>Designated aircraft</i>
<i>Frequency</i>	Every 15 min		Every 30 s for the first 10 min of the flight
<i>Designation procedures</i>	None	An aircraft at hourly intervals*	An aircraft at hourly intervals at each international aerodrome
* In accordance with regional air navigation agreement included in the <i>Regional Supplementary Procedures</i> (Doc 7030), Chapter 12 — <i>Meteorology</i> .			

## 7.4 SPECIAL AND OTHER NON-ROUTINE AIRCRAFT OBSERVATIONS

### 7.4.1 Special aircraft observations

Special observations are required to be made by all aircraft operating on international air routes whenever the following conditions are encountered or observed:

- a) turbulence that is:
  - 1) severe; or
  - 2) moderate; or

- b) icing that is:
  - 1) severe; or
  - 2) moderate; or
- c) severe mountain wave; or
- d) thunderstorms, *without hail*, that are:
  - 1) obscured; or
  - 2) embedded; or
  - 3) widespread; or
  - 4) in squall lines; or
- e) thunderstorms, *with hail*, that are:
  - 1) obscured; or
  - 2) embedded; or
  - 3) widespread; or
  - 4) in squall lines; or
- f) heavy duststorms or
- g) heavy sandstorms; or
- h) volcanic ash cloud; or
- i) pre-eruption volcanic activity or volcanic eruption.

*Note 1.— The exemptions from routine observations, mentioned in 7.3.2, do not apply to special observations which are required to be made by all aircraft during any phase of the flight and in all regions.*

*Note 2.— Pre-eruption volcanic activity in this context means unusual and/or increasing volcanic activity which could presage a volcanic eruption.*

*Note 3.— When air-ground data link is used, special air-reports constitute a data link application mentioned in 7.5.6, Note 1. To facilitate the issuance of special air-reports by the pilot in the data link environment, a future data link application with a menu-driven system for the cockpit is being developed. An example of this type of user-friendly system, not requiring addition of free text, is shown in Table 7-2.*

*Note 4.— Special air-reports of turbulence and icing during climb-out and approach are especially important, since no satisfactory method of observing these phenomena from the ground is available at this time.*

**Table 7-2. Downlink message menu incorporating conditions prompting the issuance of special air-reports**

SEVERE TURBULENCE
MODERATE TURBULENCE
SEVERE ICING
MODERATE ICING
SEVERE MOUNTAIN WAVE
THUNDERSTORMS WITHOUT HAIL
THUNDERSTORMS WITH HAIL
HEAVY DUSTSTORM
HEAVY SANDSTORM
VOLCANIC ASH CLOUD
PRE-ERUPTION VOLCANIC ACTIVITY/VOLCANIC ERUPTION

#### 7.4.2 Other non-routine observations

Other non-routine aircraft observations are made when meteorological conditions are encountered which are different from those listed under 7.4.1 (e.g. wind shear) and which, in the opinion of the pilot-in-command, may affect the safety or markedly affect the efficiency of other aircraft operations. These observations are to be made through voice communications by advising the appropriate ATS unit as soon as practicable. In the case of wind shear reports:

- a) the aircraft type must be included; and
- b) pilots must inform appropriate ATS units as soon as practicable if forecast wind shear conditions are not encountered.

### 7.5 CONTENT OF AIR-REPORTS

7.5.1 A report consisting of a position report and meteorological information is called a "routine air-report". (It may also contain operational information.) Reports containing special aircraft observations are called "special air-reports" and, in most cases, constitute a basis for the issuance of SIGMET information.

7.5.2 When voice communications are used, the elements contained in special air-reports are as follows:

Message type designator

Section 1 (position information)

- Aircraft identification
- Position or latitude or longitude
- Time
- Level or range of levels

Section 3 (meteorological information)

Condition prompting the issuance of a special air-report (one condition to be selected from the list in 7.4.1)

7.5.3 When air-ground data link is used and ADS-C or SSR Mode S is being applied, the elements contained in routine air-reports are as follows:

Message type designator

Aircraft identification

Data block 1

Latitude

Longitude

Level

Time

Data block 2

Wind direction

Wind speed

Wind quality flag

Air temperature

Turbulence (if available)

Humidity (if available)

*Note.— When ADS-C or SSR Mode S is being applied, the requirements of routine air-reports may be the combination of the basic ADS-C/SSR Mode S data block (data block 1) and the meteorological information data block (data block 2), available from ADS-C or SSR Mode S reports. The ADS-C message format is specified in the Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Air Traffic Management (PANS-ATM, Doc 4444), and the SSR Mode S message format is specified in Annex 10 — Aeronautical Telecommunications, Volume III — Communication Systems, Part I — Digital Data Communication Systems. The template for the ADS-C message is in Appendix J of this manual.*

7.5.4 When air-ground data link is used and ADS-C and SSR Mode S are not being applied, the elements contained in routine air-reports are as follows:

Message type designator

Section 1 (Position information)

Aircraft identification

Position or latitude and longitude

Time

Flight level or altitude

Next position and time over

Ensuing significant point

Section 2 (Operational information)

Estimated time of arrival

Endurance

Section 3 (Meteorological information)

Air temperature

Wind direction

Wind speed

Turbulence

Aircraft icing

Humidity (if available)

*Note.*— The controller-pilot data link communications (CPDLC) application entitled “Position report” may be used for these air-reports. The details of this data link application are specified in the Manual of Air Traffic Services Data Link Applications (Doc 9694) and Annex 10, Volume III, Part I.

7.5.5 The meteorological content of routine air-reports using air-ground data link is summarized in Table 7-3.

**Table 7-3. Meteorological content of routine air-reports transmitted via air-ground data link**  
(All the reports include information on the position of the aircraft in four dimensions.)

<i>ADS-C and SSR Mode S not being applied</i>	<i>ADS-C or SSR Mode S being applied</i>
Air temperature	Wind direction
Wind direction	Wind speed
Wind speed	Wind quality flag
Turbulence	Air temperature
Aircraft icing	Turbulence (if available)
Humidity (if available)	Humidity (if available)

7.5.6 When air-ground data link is used, the elements contained in special air-reports are as follows:

Message designator  
Aircraft identification

Data block 1  
Latitude  
Longitude  
Level  
Time

Data block 2  
Wind direction  
Wind speed  
Wind quality flag  
Temperature  
Turbulence (if available)  
Humidity (if available)

Data block 3  
Condition prompting the issuance of a special air-report (one condition to be selected from the list in 7.4.1)

*Note 1.*— The data link flight information service (D-FIS) application entitled “Special air-report service” may be used for these air-reports. The details of this data link application are specified in Doc 9694 and Annex 10, Volume III, Part I.

*Note 2.*— In the case of the transmission of a special air-report of pre-eruption volcanic activity, volcanic eruption or volcanic ash cloud, there are additional requirements (see 7.8).

*Note 3.*— The template for special air-reports (downlink) is given in Annex 3, Appendix 4, Table A4-1.



## **7.6 CRITERIA FOR REPORTING METEOROLOGICAL AND RELATED PARAMETERS IN AUTOMATED AIR-REPORTS**

When air-ground data link is used, the wind direction and speed, wind quality flag, air temperature, turbulence and humidity to be included in automated air-reports are reported in accordance with the criteria shown in Annex 3, Appendix 4, section 2.

## **7.7 EXCHANGE OF AIR-REPORTS**

### **7.7.1 Basic principles**

The meteorological authority and the ATS authority must establish appropriate arrangements to ensure that routine and special air-reports reported to ATS units by aircraft in flight are transmitted without delay to the world area forecast centres (WAFCs) and to the associated meteorological watch office (MWO).

### **7.7.2 Additional exchange of special air-reports beyond MWOs**

Special air-reports are not normally exchanged regionally beyond the MWO. However, further dissemination is required in the following circumstances:

- a) When a special air-report is received but the forecaster considers that the phenomenon causing the report is not expected to persist, therefore, does not warrant issuance of a SIGMET, the special air-report should nevertheless be disseminated in the same way that SIGMET information is disseminated, i.e. to MWOs and other meteorological offices in accordance with regional air navigation agreement;
- b) Special air-reports of pre-eruption volcanic activity, volcanic eruption or volcanic ash cloud are to be transmitted to the volcanic ash advisory centres (VAACs).

### **7.7.3 Additional exchange of air-reports beyond WAFCs**

Air-reports exchanged beyond WAFCs are considered as basic meteorological data; therefore, their further dissemination is subject to World Meteorological Organization (WMO) provisions. The dissemination pattern of air-reports is shown in Table 7-4.

**Table 7-4. Dissemination pattern of air-reports**  
 (“→” indicates the centre(s)/office(s) to which the air-report received is to be transmitted)

		<i>Type of air-report received at the ATS unit</i>		
		<i>Routine by air-ground data link</i>	<i>Special by air-ground data link</i>	<i>Special by voice communications</i>
<i>Dissemination</i>	<i>Initially by ATS unit</i>	→ WAFCS*** → MWO	→ MWO → WAFCS***	→ MWO
	<i>Subsequently by MWO</i>		→ VAACs*	→ WAFCS*** → VAACs* → MET offices** → MWOs**
<p>* Only special air-reports of pre-eruption volcanic activity, volcanic eruption or volcanic ash cloud.            ** To be disseminated in the same way as SIGMET information (i.e. to MWOs and other meteorological offices in accordance with regional air navigation agreement) <b>only if</b> the special air-report does not warrant issuance of a SIGMET.            *** In addition, to be disseminated to the centres designated by regional air navigation agreement for the operation of AFS Internet-based services.</p>				

## 7.8 RECORDING AND POST-FLIGHT REPORTING OF AIRCRAFT OBSERVATIONS OF VOLCANIC ACTIVITY

Special aircraft observations of pre-eruption volcanic activity, volcanic eruption or volcanic ash cloud are the only type of air-report that requires a post-flight report, which should be recorded using the special air-report of volcanic activity form (MODEL VAR). A copy of the form is shown in Appendix 1 to the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444). It is to be included with the flight documentation provided to flight crews operating on routes which could be affected by volcanic ash clouds. The completed form is to be delivered by the operator or the flight crew member, without delay, to the aerodrome meteorological office or, if such an office is not easily accessible to the arriving flight crew members, the completed form must be dealt with in accordance with local arrangements made by the meteorological authority and the operator concerned. The completed report of volcanic activity received by an aerodrome meteorological office must be transmitted without delay to the MWO responsible for the provision of meteorological watch for the flight information region (FIR) in which the volcanic activity was observed.

## 7.9 DETAILED INSTRUCTIONS CONCERNING THE CONTENT OF SPECIAL AIR-REPORTS RECEIVED BY VOICE COMMUNICATIONS BY MWOs

7.9.1 The following paragraphs provide details on the content of special air-reports received by voice communications (see also Example 7-1). It is essential that special air-reports be compiled by the ATS units and retransmitted by the MWO concerned in the correct order and format to permit their use in meteorological and other computers. Of special importance is the application of the indicator “ARS” for a special air-report.

*Note.— MWOs do not need to retransmit operational information concerning “next position and time over”, “estimated time of arrival” or “endurance”.*

**Example 7-1. SPECIAL air-reports as recorded  
on the ground by the MWO concerned**

*SPECIAL AIREP message*

ARS VA812 SEV MTW OBS AT 1215Z N2020W07005 FL180

*Meaning:*

Special air-report from VIASA\* flight number 812. Report refers to a severe mountain wave observed at 1215 UTC, position 20 degrees 20 minutes north and 70 degrees 5 minutes west, at flight level 180.

\* Fictitious operator

**7.9.2 Message type designator  
(ARS)**

A message type designator “ARS” is required.

*Note.— Where air-reports are handled by automatic data processing equipment that cannot accept this message type designator, the use of a different message type designator is permitted by regional air navigation agreement, provided that:*

- a) *the data transmitted is in accordance with that specified in the special air-report format; and*
- b) *measures are taken to ensure that special air-reports are forwarded to the appropriate meteorological unit and to other aircraft likely to be affected.*

**7.9.3 Aircraft identification  
(VA812)**

Aircraft call sign reported as one unit without any spaces or hyphens.

**7.9.4 Phenomenon prompting a special air-report  
(SEV MTW)**

The phenomenon is reported as follows:

- a) severe turbulence as “SEV TURB”
- b) moderate turbulence as “MOD TURB”
- c) severe icing as “SEV ICE”
- d) moderate icing as “MOD ICE”

- e) severe mountain wave as "SEV MTW"
- f) thunderstorm without hail<sup>1</sup> as "TS"
- g) thunderstorm with hail<sup>1</sup> as "TSGR"
- h) heavy duststorm as "HVY DS"
- i) heavy sandstorm as "HVY SS"
- j) volcanic ash cloud as "VA CLD"
- k) pre-eruption volcanic activity or volcanic eruption as "VA" followed, as appropriate, by the name of the volcano ("MT" followed by the volcano name)

#### 7.9.5 Time (OBS AT 1215Z)

The time of the aircraft observation, at the position indicated, is shown by "OBS AT" followed by the time in hours and minutes UTC (four figures followed without a space by a "Z").

#### 7.9.6 Position (N2020W07005)

Position is given in whole degrees latitude and longitude (N or S followed without a space by two figures for latitude, E or W followed without a space by three figures for longitude). Whole degrees and whole minutes latitude and longitude may also be used (four figures for latitude and five for longitude). If a coded indicator (two to five characters) for a significant point (e.g. LN, MAY, HADDY), or a significant point followed by the magnetic bearing (degrees in three figures) and distance (three figures and KM or NM) of that point (e.g. DUB180040NM) has been used in the message received, the MWO concerned should convert this information into a position expressed as latitude and longitude.

#### 7.9.7 Flight level or altitude (FL180)

The flight level is shown by an "FL" followed by the actual level (three figures); the altitude is shown by four figures followed without a space by "M" or "FT", as appropriate.

*Note.— Detailed instructions for producing and transmitting air-reports, together with examples of air-reports, are contained in the PANS-ATM (Doc 4444), Appendix 1.*

- 
1. The thunderstorms to be reported should be confined to those which are:
    - obscured in haze; or
    - embedded in cloud; or
    - widespread; or
    - forming a squall line.

## Chapter 8

### AERONAUTICAL CLIMATOLOGICAL INFORMATION

8.1 Aerodrome climatological information is primarily required by operators to assist them in their planning for flight operations particularly for pre-operational route planning. The information required is prepared in the form of aerodrome climatological tables and summaries.

8.2 Meteorological authorities should make arrangements for collecting and retaining the necessary observational data and have the capability to prepare climatological tables and summaries for each international aerodrome within their territory. The content of aerodrome climatological tables and summaries is given in Annex 3, Appendix 7. The format of aerodrome climatological tables and summaries is given in the *Technical Regulations* (WMO-No. 49), Volume II — *Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation*.

8.3 Aerodrome climatological tables and summaries are exchanged on request between meteorological authorities as necessary. Operators and other aeronautical users requiring such information should contact the meteorological authority concerned.



## Chapter 9

# RELEVANT DOCUMENTS

### 9.1 ICAO DOCUMENTS OF A SPECIFICALLY METEOROLOGICAL NATURE

The following ICAO documents give additional or more detailed information on meteorological subjects that may be found useful.

#### **Annex 3 — *Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation* (International Standards and Recommended Practices)**

This Annex contains international regulatory material covering principles and objectives, Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPs) and guidance material which have worldwide applicability. It establishes the specific responsibilities of States for providing meteorological services and the responsibility of operators using these services. The Annex is divided into two parts: Part I contains the core SARPs which are of primary interest to management level personnel, and Part II contains technical requirements and specifications of primary interest to operational personnel. The attachments (green pages) comprise material supplementary to the SARPs or included as a guide to their application.

#### ***Regional Supplementary Procedures (Doc 7030)***

Regional supplementary procedures (SUPPS) are approved by the Council of ICAO for application in the respective regions. Currently, the document contains specific procedures for the regional application of Annex 3, Chapter 5 (Aircraft Observations and Reports) as well as various specific regional procedures related to communications, air traffic services, etc.

#### **Electronic Regional Air Navigation Plans (eANPs), Volumes I and II**

These documents detail the requirements for facilities and services (including meteorology) in the various ICAO regions. Each eANP includes a section dealing with meteorology, both in Volumes I and II. The former part introduces basic planning principles, operational requirements and planning criteria relating to the meteorological service to be provided to international air navigation in the ICAO region concerned. These principles, requirements and criteria stem from relevant provisions of Annex 3 and, in particular, those calling for regional air navigation agreement. This level of service is to be considered as the minimum for planning of meteorological facilities and/or services by States in the region. A detailed description and the list of the meteorological facilities and services to be provided by States in order to fulfil the requirements of the Volume I eANP are contained Volume II. The meteorology parts of the Volumes I and II eANPs cover, as necessary, all or some of the following topics: meteorological service required at aerodromes, MWOs, meteorological observations, reports and forecasts, regional aspects of the world area forecast system (WAFS), regional aspects of the International Airways Volcano Watch (IAVW) and the tropical cyclone watch. Current eANPs include:

*Africa-Indian Ocean Region (Doc 7474)*

Volume I

Volume II

*Asia and Pacific Regions (Doc 9673)*

- Volume I
- Volume II

*Caribbean and South American Regions (Doc 8733)*

- Volume I
- Volume II

*European Region (Doc 7754)*

- Volume I
- Volume II

*Middle East Region (Doc 9708)**North American (NAM) Air Navigation Plan (under process)**North Atlantic Region (Doc 9634)*

- Volume I
- Volume II

**Manuals**

In addition to this manual, the following manuals provide detailed guidance or information on specific aspects connected with meteorological services to international air navigation:

- Doc 7488      *Manual of the ICAO Standard Atmosphere (extended to 80 kilometres (262 500 ft))*
- Doc 9328      *Manual of Runway Visual Range Observing and Reporting Practices*
- Doc 9377      *Manual on Coordination between Air Traffic Services, Aeronautical Information Services and Aeronautical Meteorological Services*
- Doc 9691      *Manual on Volcanic Ash, Radioactive Material and Toxic Chemical Clouds*
- Doc 9817      *Manual on Low-level Wind Shear*
- Doc 9837      *Manual on Automatic Meteorological Observing Systems at Aerodromes*
- Doc 10003     *Manual on the ICAO Meteorological Information Exchange Model*
- Doc 10100     *Manual on Space Weather Information in Support of International Air Navigation*

**Regional guides**

Most ICAO regional offices prepare and make available regional guides on various subjects including: regional SIGMET guides; the AMBEX system; the ROBEX system; the RODEX system; catalogue of information available in international OPMET databanks, guidelines for the implementation of OPMET data exchange using IWXXM, etc. For details, regional offices should be approached directly.



**IAVW documents**

*Handbook on the International Airways Volcano Watch (IAVW) — Operational Procedures and Contact List (Doc 9766).*

**9.2 OTHER ICAO DOCUMENTS**

In addition to the above-mentioned documents dealing with aeronautical meteorological subjects, meteorological offices and stations designated to provide meteorological service for aerodromes international civil aviation may also require other ICAO documents. A list of these is given below divided into two parts:

Part 1 — ICAO publications required at both the administrative and the operational levels of meteorological services.

Part 2 — ICAO publications required mainly at the administrative level of meteorological services.

**PART 1 — ICAO publications required at the administrative and operational levels of meteorological services**

Annex 5	<i>Units of Measurement to be Used in Air and Ground Operations</i>
Doc 4444	<i>Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Air Traffic Management (PANS-ATM)</i>
Doc 7192	<i>Training Manual, Part F-1 — Meteorology for Air Traffic Controllers and Pilots</i>
Doc 7910	<i>Location Indicators</i>
Doc 8400	<i>Procedures for Air Navigation Services — ICAO Abbreviations and Codes (PANS-ABC)</i>
Doc 8585	<i>Designators for Aircraft Operating Agencies, Aeronautical Authorities and Services</i>
Doc 10066	<i>Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Aeronautical Information Management (PANS-AIM)</i>

**PART 2 — ICAO publications required mainly at the administrative level of meteorological services**

Annex 2	<i>Rules of the Air</i>
Annex 4	<i>Aeronautical Charts</i>
Annex 6	<i>Operation of Aircraft</i> Part I — <i>International Commercial Air Transport — Aeroplanes</i> Part II — <i>International General Aviation — Aeroplanes</i> Part III — <i>International Operations — Helicopters</i>
Annex 8	<i>Airworthiness of Aircraft</i>

- 
- Annex 10      *Aeronautical Telecommunications*  
Volume I — *Radio Navigation Aids*  
Volume II — *Communication Procedures including those with PANS status*  
Volume III — *Communication Systems (Part I — Digital Data Communication Systems; Part II — Voice Communication Systems)*  
Volume IV — *Surveillance and Collision Avoidance Systems*  
Volume V — *Aeronautical Radio Frequency Spectrum Utilization*
- Annex 11      *Air Traffic Services*
- Annex 12      *Search and Rescue*
- Annex 14      *Aerodromes*  
Volume I — *Aerodrome Design and Operations*  
Volume II — *Heliports*
- Annex 15      *Aeronautical Information Services*
- Doc 7100      *Tariffs for Airports and Air Navigation Services*
- Doc 7475      *Working Arrangements between the International Civil Aviation Organization and the World Meteorological Organization*
- Doc 8126      *Aeronautical Information Services Manual*
- Doc 8168      *Procedures for Air Navigation Services — Aircraft Operations (PANS-OPS)*  
Volume I — *Flight Procedures*  
Volume II — *Construction of Visual and Instrument Flight Procedures*
- Doc 8259      *Manual on the Planning and Engineering of the Aeronautical Fixed Telecommunication Network*
- Doc 9082      *ICAO's Policies on Charges for Airports and Air Navigation Services*
- Doc 9137      *Airport Services Manual*  
Part 1 — *Rescue and Firefighting*  
Part 2 — *Pavement Surface Conditions*  
Part 3 — *Wildlife Hazard Management*  
Part 5 — *Removal of Disabled Aircraft*  
Part 6 — *Control of Obstacles*  
Part 7 — *Airport Emergency Planning*  
Part 8 — *Airport Operational Services*  
Part 9 — *Airport Maintenance Practices*
- Doc 9150      *Stolport Manual*
- Doc 9157      *Aerodrome Design Manual*  
Part 1 — *Runways*  
Part 2 — *Taxiways, Aprons and Holding Bays*  
Part 3 — *Pavements*  
Part 4 — *Visual Aids*  
Part 5 — *Electrical Systems*  
Part 6 — *Frangibility*

---

Doc 9161	<i>Manual on Air Navigation Services Economics</i>
Doc 9184	<i>Airport Planning Manual</i> Part 1 — <i>Master Planning</i> Part 2 — <i>Land Use and Environmental Management</i> Part 3 — <i>Guidelines for Consultant/Construction Services</i>
Doc 9683	<i>Human Factors Training Manual</i>
Doc 9694	<i>Manual of Air Traffic Services Data Link Applications</i>
Doc 9731	<i>International Aeronautical and Maritime Search and Rescue (IAMSAR) Manual</i>
Doc 9756	<i>Manual of Aircraft Accident and Incident Investigation</i>
Doc 9855	<i>Guidelines on the Use of the Public Internet for Aeronautical Applications</i>
Doc 9974	<i>Flight Safety and Volcanic Ash</i>
ICAO's <i>Products and Services Catalogue</i>	

### 9.3 WMO DOCUMENTS

Apart from issuing documents of a general meteorological character, WMO also publishes documents which deal with aeronautical meteorology. The following documents are relevant:

*Technical Regulations* (WMO-No. 49), Volume I — *General Meteorological Standards and Recommended Practices*

*Technical Regulations* (WMO-No. 49), Volume II — *Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation* (equivalent in status to ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices and Procedures for Air Navigation Services)

**Manuals** (these often have a higher status than ICAO manuals)

*Manual on Codes — International Codes* (WMO-No. 306): contains details of all meteorological codes, including those relevant to aviation.

*Manual on the Global Telecommunication System* (WMO-No. 386): contains practices and procedures to be used in the collection, exchange and distribution of observational and processed information on a worldwide scale.

*Manual on the Global Data-processing and Forecasting System* (WMO-No. 485): contains practices and procedures to be used in the processing, storage and retrieval of meteorological information. The manual, among others, includes regulations relating to the provision of service by WMO RSMCs in response to a nuclear emergency.

*Manual on the Global Observing System* (WMO-No. 544): contains practices and procedures for methods, techniques and facilities to be used for making observations on a worldwide scale.

**Guides**

*Guide to Instruments and Methods of Observation* (WMO-No. 8): outlines basic standards of instrument and observing practices.

*Guide on the Global Data-processing System* (WMO-No. 305).

*Guide to the Global Observing System* (WMO-No. 488).

*Guide on Meteorological Observing and Information Distribution Systems for Aviation Weather Services* (WMO-No. 731).

*Guide to Practices for Meteorological Offices Serving Aviation* (WMO-No. 732).

---

## Appendix A

# INFORMATION ON THE WORLD AREA FORECAST SYSTEM (WAFS)

(See Chapter 1, 1.5)

### 1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION

1.1 The world area forecast system (WAFS) brings to meteorological forecasting the concept of centralization, in designated centres, of forecasting activities for the pre-flight planning and en-route phases of flights. Its general aspects were initially developed by the Communications/Meteorology Divisional Meeting (1982), held conjointly with the Seventh Session of the World Meteorological Organization (WMO) Commission for Aeronautical Meteorology. A major review and development of the WAFS was conducted at the Meteorology Divisional Meeting (2002) held conjointly with the Twelfth Session of the WMO Commission for Aeronautical Meteorology.

1.2 The objective of the system is to provide meteorological offices, meteorological authorities and other users (e.g. pilots and operators) with global aeronautical meteorological en-route forecasts in digital form. This objective is achieved through a comprehensive, integrated, worldwide, uniform and cost-effective system which takes full advantage of evolving technologies. Currently, two world area forecast centres (WAFCs), i.e. WAFc London and WAFc Washington, issue global upper-air forecasts in the WMO GRIB, Edition 2, code form and medium- and high-level SIGWX forecasts in the BUFR code form. In addition, the WAFCs issue, as a backup, SIGWX forecasts in the PNG chart form which can also be used by States unable to generate charts from the BUFR data.

1.3 WAFS forecasts are made available by WAFc London and WAFc Washington on the AFS Internet-based services (Secure Aviation Data Information Service (SADIS) FTP and WAFS Internet file service (WIFS)), respectively).

*Note.— The 0° elevation angle contour is the theoretical extent of coverage, while the 5° elevation angle is considered to be the practical extent of coverage according to nominal design criteria.*

1.4 In addition to WAFS forecasts, a global set of alphanumeric operational meteorological (OPMET) information is made available on the AFS Internet-based services.

1.5 The WAFS is expected to develop to ensure that it continues to meet evolving aeronautical requirements in a cost-effective manner.

### 2. GUIDELINES FOR AUTHORIZED ACCESS TO THE WAFS INTERNET-BASED SERVICES

The guidelines below were developed by ICAO to assist States in arranging for access to the WAFS satellite broadcast. In 2.1 and 2.2 below, the guidelines have been updated to reflect the discontinuation of WAFS satellite broadcasts.

## 2.1 GENERAL

2.1.1 The WAFS Internet-based services constitute a sub-system of the ICAO AFS providing aeronautical information to States.

2.1.2 The aeronautical information made available by the WAFS Internet-based services includes primarily OPMET information and WAFS upper wind and upper-air temperature, humidity, tropopause heights and temperatures, maximum winds, cumulonimbus clouds, icing, turbulence and significant weather forecasts in gridded and graphical formats, and alphanumeric messages.

2.1.3 Through the use of the Internet-based services, States may wish to meet their obligation under Article 28 of the Convention on International Civil Aviation regarding the supply to users of meteorological information for the provision of meteorological service to international air navigation.

2.1.4 Recovery by States of associated costs through charges to international civil aviation should be based on the principles contained in Article 15 of the *Convention on International Civil Aviation* and *ICAO's Policies on Charges for Airports and Air Navigation Services* (Doc 9082).

## 2.2 Authorized access to the Internet-based services

2.2.1 It is the prerogative of each State to determine the distribution of the OPMET information to users, in the State concerned, as well as the means, links and information flow to be used for this purpose. In view of this, it is for each State to determine the users in the State concerned to be provided with authorized access to the Internet-based services.

2.2.2 Where meteorological service for international air navigation is provided by or through arrangements made by the meteorological authority in compliance with the Standard contained in Annex 3 — *Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation*, Chapter 2, 2.1.4, the meteorological authorities, WAFCs, and aerodrome and other meteorological offices should fully enjoy the benefits of the Internet-based services to receive the OPMET information. Furthermore, it is at the discretion of each State to determine, on advice from its meteorological authority, whether any of the following users will be provided with authorized access to the AFS Internet-based services: operators; air traffic services units; search and rescue services units; aeronautical information services units; volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisory centres; and other aeronautical users.

2.2.3 Each State will notify ICAO and, for the purpose of efficiency, also the provider State for the AFS Internet-based service concerned, regarding the users in that State it has authorized to access the Internet-based services.

## 3. DUTIES OF AERODROME METEOROLOGICAL OFFICES IN THE CONTEXT OF THE WAFS

It should be noted that while the WAFS provides en-route weather forecasts, the preparation of meteorological observations and aerodrome forecasts remains the responsibility of individual aerodrome meteorological offices. With the global implementation of the WAFS, they can now dedicate much more of their resources to these essential tasks.

---

## Appendix B

### LOCATION OF INSTRUMENTS AT AERODROMES

(See Chapter 2, 2.1.4)

#### 1. GENERAL

1.1 The proper location of meteorological instruments, or of the sensors connected with the instruments, presents many more difficulties at aerodromes than at synoptic meteorological stations. While in both cases the purpose of the instruments is to obtain as accurate information as possible on certain meteorological parameters, at the synoptic meteorological stations the only requirement in respect of location is adequate instrument exposure. At aerodromes, there is a range of requirements and conditions in addition to adequate instrument exposure which the instrument location must satisfy which in particular include the following:

- a) a representative measurement for the aerodrome as a whole, and for take-off and landing operations in particular;
- b) compliance with obstacle restriction provisions;
- c) location, in certain operational areas, requiring frangibility of instrument support construction; and
- d) location in respect of terrain conditions, power supply and communication facilities.

1.2 This appendix deals with the location of the main types of meteorological instruments and instrument systems in use at aerodromes, i.e. those for the measurement of surface wind, runway visual range (RVR), height of cloud base, temperature and pressure. The information is relatively general because aerodromes vary greatly in respect of the types of operations for which they are used and the types of terrain, aspects which may considerably affect the location of instruments.

#### 2. THE AERODROME ENVIRONMENT

2.1 Before dealing with the location of instruments at aerodromes, there is a need for a brief description of the aerodrome environment in general. It is an environment of great complexity and size, at times covering large areas with runways attaining lengths of four kilometres. The runway complex may be near built-up areas with public, administrative or technical functions. (Figure B-1 gives a schematic representation of an aerodrome and its most important features.)

2.2 The difficulties that such a large and complex area as an aerodrome can create for the provision of timely and representative meteorological measurements are often considerable:

- a) the size of the runway complex, which frequently cannot be adequately covered by a single instrument or sensor;

---

1. The term "instrument" is often used to identify both an instrument and a sensor.

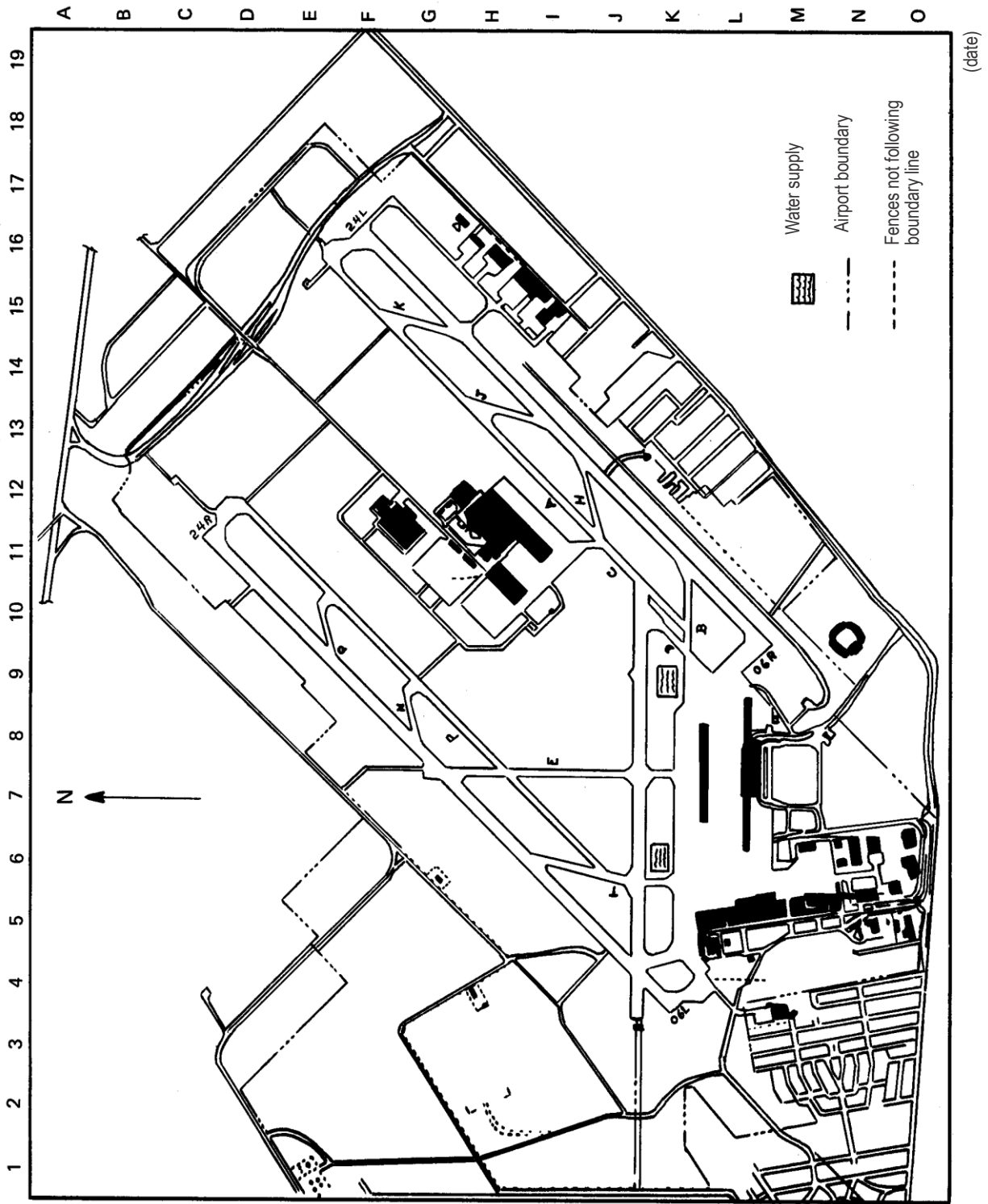


Figure B-1. Schematic representation of an aerodrome and its most important features



- b) difficulty of access to certain parts of the aerodrome, which may prevent the location of instruments at the most suitable sites or access for maintenance purposes;
- c) the obstacle restriction regulations, which may have similar effects;
- d) the size of buildings or of other constructions (towers, masts, etc.) which may prevent adequate instrument exposure, and/or affect the wind conditions in the path of aircraft which are taking off or landing;
- e) the effects of aircraft movement and exhausts (particularly during taxiing and turning operations), and of large car parks and their associated emissions.

2.3 To overcome these difficulties, the meteorological authority must maintain close contact with the authority responsible for the aerodrome and its master plan. This involves daily contact, as well as long-range planning, because the setting up of instrument sites and the laying of cables and other connected activities must not interfere with other aerodrome systems, disturb the normal functioning of the aerodrome or become unduly expensive. Close cooperation with operators whose requirements often determine instrument location is also necessary. Finally, the local air traffic services (ATS) authority is also concerned with these difficulties as its units often use duplicate indicators and may have requirements of its own for the location of the relevant sensors.

2.3.1 The meteorological authority should come to an agreement with the authority responsible for the aerodrome and its master plan on a procedure for the evaluation of proposed changes to the airport environment that may affect the representativeness of meteorological observations and reports and the wind conditions in the path of aircraft which are taking off or landing.

2.3.2 In particular, newly erected or modified structures that protrude a 1:35 obstacle plane from the runway centre line with a width greater than 30 m should be evaluated as to their wake effect. For these structures, a maximum wake deficit of 7 kt in the path of aircraft which are taking off or landing is acceptable. The wake effect of structures may be established during the planning phase by wind tunnel modelling or by computational fluid dynamics, provided these are carried out according to industry standards.

2.4 In addition to close cooperation with aerodrome and ATS authorities and with operators, the effective determination of the most appropriate location of instruments requires a detailed on-site analysis by a meteorologist. The analysis could involve field trials, particularly in circumstances where the topography and/or prevailing weather are complex, while in more straightforward cases a simple on-site inspection may be sufficient. In the case of new aerodromes, it is usual to establish an observing station, or at least a minimum set of instruments, before the aerodrome is built in order to obtain information on meteorological conditions likely to affect operations at the aerodrome.

### 3. OBSTACLE RESTRICTIONS

3.1 In the choice of sites for instruments at aerodromes, account must be taken first and foremost of obstacle restrictions at the aerodrome. The meteorological instruments that are listed as objects which may constitute "obstacles" are anemometers, ceilometers and transmissometers/forward-scatter meters (for details see the *Airport Services Manual* (Doc 9137), Part 6 — *Control of Obstacles*, Chapter 5). Specifications governing the restriction of obstacles at aerodromes are given in Annex 14 — *Aerodromes*, Volume I — *Aerodrome Design and Operations*, Chapters 4 and 9. The objective of these specifications is to define the airspace at the aerodromes so as to ensure that it is free from obstacles thereby permitting the intended aircraft operations to be conducted safely. This is achieved by establishing a series of obstacle limitation surfaces that define the limits to which objects may project into the airspace.

3.2 Aerodromes intended for use by international civil aviation are classified according to a reference code. This code provides a simple method for interrelating the numerous specifications concerning the characteristics of aerodromes, so as to provide a series of aerodrome facilities that are suitable for the aircraft that are intended to operate at the aerodrome. The code is composed of two elements as shown in Table B-1; the first element is numerical (1 to 4) and is related to aircraft performance, the second is a letter (A to F) related to aircraft dimensions. The width of the runways, the runway strips and the slope of the obstacle limitation surfaces, etc., vary according to the aerodrome reference code.

3.3 The more important obstacle limitation surfaces, from the standpoint of the siting of meteorological instruments, are the transitional surfaces which limit obstacle height along the side of the runway. The recommended runway width, strip width and slope of the transitional surfaces are given in Table B-2, which is derived from provisions given in Annex 14, Volume I. It may be seen that all runways should be protected by a transitional surface that begins at the edge of the runway strip and slopes upwards and outwards away from the runway. The width of the strip and the slope of the transitional surface depend on the runway reference code number. A precision approach runway is protected by a second "inner" transitional surface and the airspace over the runway between the two inner surfaces is referred to as the obstacle free zone (OFZ). Once the reference code number for a particular runway is known, it is possible, on the basis of Table B-1, to obtain the recommended minimum dimensions and slopes of the associated strip and transitional surfaces from Table B-2.

3.4 A cross-section of the transitional surfaces recommended for a precision approach runway of reference code number 3 or 4 is shown in Figure B-2. The positions closest to the runway at which various meteorological instruments may be located without infringing the transitional surfaces are also indicated in Figure B-2. Unless there are exceptional local circumstances, no meteorological instruments should infringe the OFZ. Where this is unavoidable, in order to ensure representative observations, the sensor support must be frangible, lighted and preferably shielded by an existing essential navigation aid. The principle of "shielding" in relation to obstacles is dealt with in Doc 9137, Part 6, Chapter 2. The most important provisions governing the siting of meteorological instruments are summarized in Table B-3.

3.5 In addition to taking account of the distance from runway centre lines, when siting meteorological instruments care must always be exercised to ensure that the instruments do not present an obstacle to aircraft using taxiways.

**Table B-1. Aerodrome reference code**  
(extract from Annex 14, Volume I)

Code element 1	
Code number	Aeroplane reference field length
1	Less than 800 m
2	800 m up to but not including 1 200 m
3	1 200 m up to but not including 1 800 m
4	1 800 m and over
Code element 2	
Code letter	Wingspan
A	Up to but not including 15 m
B	15 m up to but not including 24 m
C	24 m up to but not including 36 m
D	36 m up to but not including 52 m
E	52 m up to but not including 65 m
F	65 m up to but not including 80 m

*Note 1.— Guidance on planning for aeroplanes with wingspans greater than 80 m is given in the Aerodrome Design Manual (Doc 9157), Parts 1 and 2.*

*Note 2.— Procedures on conducting an aerodrome compatibility study to accommodate aeroplanes with folding wing tips spanning two code letters are given in the PANS-Aerodromes (Doc 9981). Further guidance can be found in the manufacturer's manual on aircraft characteristics for airport planning.*

**Table B-2. Dimensions and slopes of obstacle limitation surfaces — approach runways**  
(adapted from Annex 14, Volume I)

Surface and dimensions <sup>a</sup> (1)	RUNWAY CLASSIFICATION										
	Non-instrument Code number				Non-precision approach Code number			Precision approach category I Code number			II or III Code number
	1 (2)	2 (3)	3 (4)	4 (5)	1,2 (6)	3 (7)	4 (8)	1,2 (9)	3,4 (10)	3,4 (11)	
<b>CONICAL</b>											
Slope	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%	
Height	35 m	55 m	75 m	100 m	60 m	75 m	100 m	60 m	100 m	100 m	
<b>INNER HORIZONTAL</b>											
Height	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	45 m	
Radius	2 000 m	2 500 m	4 000 m	4 000 m	3 500 m	4 000 m	4 000 m	3 500 m	4 000 m	4 000 m	
<b>INNER APPROACH</b>											
Width	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	90 m	120 m <sup>e</sup>	120 m <sup>e</sup>	
Distance from threshold	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	60 m	60 m	60 m	
Length	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	900 m	900 m	900 m	
Slope	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	2.5%	2%	2%	
<b>APPROACH</b>											
Length of inner edge	60 m	80 m	150 m	150 m	140 m	280 m	280 m	140 m	280 m	280 m	
Distance from threshold	30 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	60 m	
Divergence (each side)	10%	10%	10%	10%	15%	15%	15%	15%	15%	15%	
<b>First section</b>											
Length	1 600 m	2 500 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	2 500 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	3 000 m	
Slope	5%	4%	3.33%	2.5%	3.33%	2%	2%	2.5%	2%	2%	
<b>Second section</b>											
Length	—	—	—	—	—	3 600 m <sup>b</sup>	3 600 m <sup>b</sup>	12 000 m	3 600 m <sup>b</sup>	3 600 m <sup>b</sup>	
Slope	—	—	—	—	—	2.5%	2.5%	3%	2.5%	2.5%	
<b>Horizontal section</b>											
Length	—	—	—	—	—	8 400 m <sup>b</sup>	8 400 m <sup>b</sup>	—	8 400 m <sup>b</sup>	8 400 m <sup>b</sup>	
Total length	—	—	—	—	—	15 000 m	15 000 m	15 000 m	15 000 m	15 000 m	
<b>TRANSITIONAL</b>											
Slope	20%	20%	14.3%	14.3%	20%	14.3%	14.3%	14.3%	14.3%	14.3%	
<b>INNER TRANSITIONAL</b>											
Slope	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	40%	33.3%	33.3%	
<b>BALKED LANDING SURFACE</b>											
Length of inner edge	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	90 m	120 m <sup>e</sup>	120 m <sup>e</sup>	
Distance from threshold	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	c	1 800 m <sup>d</sup>	1 800 m <sup>d</sup>	
Divergence (each side)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	10%	10%	10%	
Slope	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4%	3.33%	3.33%	

- a. All dimensions are measured horizontally unless specified otherwise.  
b. Variable length (see 4.2.9 or 4.2.17 of Annex 14, Volume I).  
c. Distance to the end of strip.  
d. Or end of runway whichever is less.

- e. Where the code letter is F (Table B-1), the width is increased to 140 m except for those aerodromes that accommodate a code letter F aeroplane equipped with digital avionics that provide steering commands to maintain an established track during the go-around manoeuvre.

*Note.— See Circulars 301 and 345, and Chapter 4 of the PANS-Aerodromes, Part I (Doc 9981) for further information.*

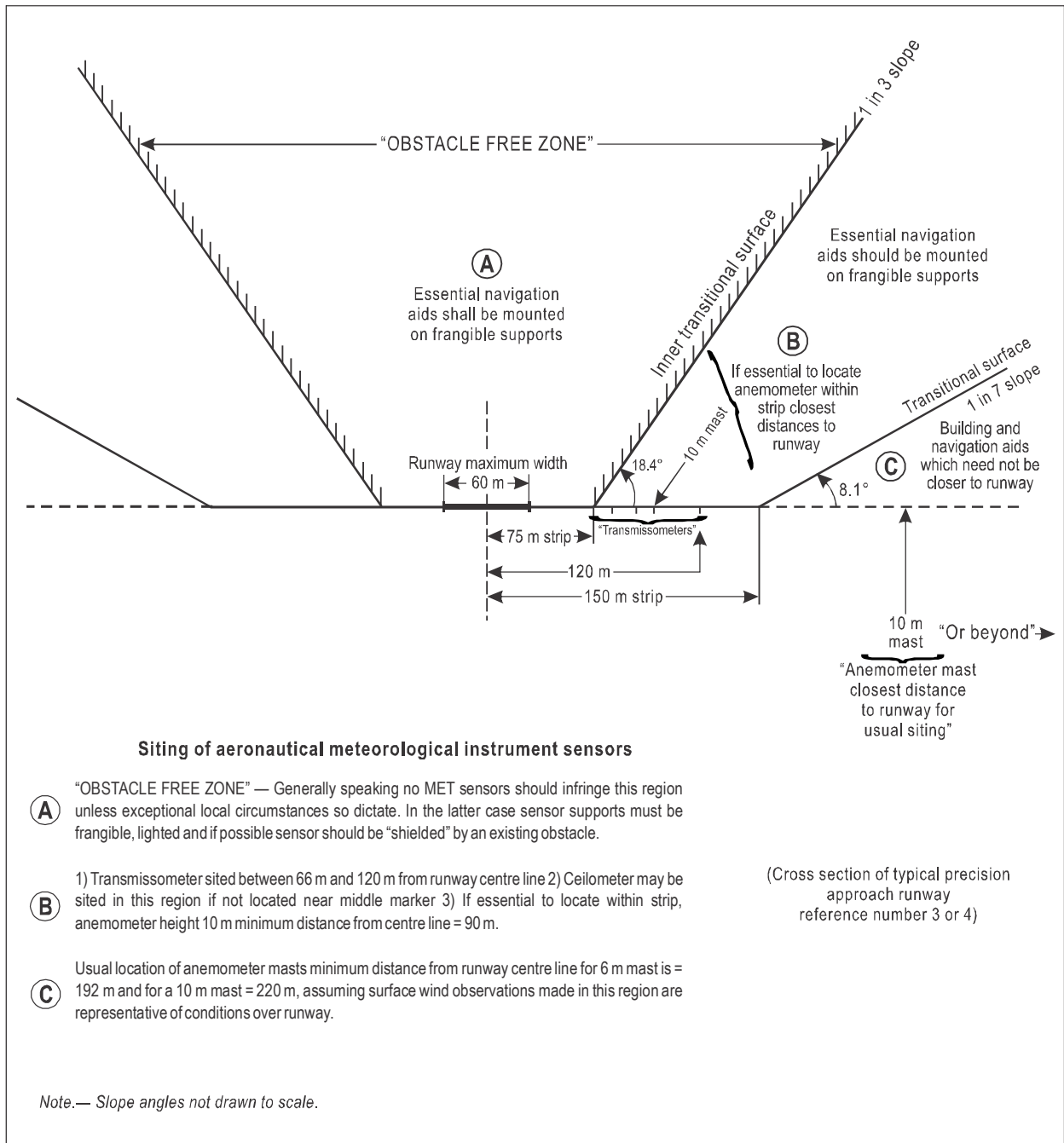


Figure B-2. Obstacle limitation surfaces

**Table B-3. Location of meteorological instruments at aerodromes**

(Minimum distances from runways are illustrated in Figure B-2.)

<i>Meteorological element observed or measured</i>	<i>Typical equipment</i>	<i>Typical dimensions of equipment</i>	<i>Operational area for which element is to be representative</i>	<i>Siting provision in Annex 3</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Surface wind speed and direction	Anemometer and wind vane	Usually mounted on tubular or lattice mast 10 m (30 ft) above the ground. Single tube mast for both instruments appropriate in proximity to runways.	Conditions along the runway and touchdown zone in local routine reports and local special reports; conditions above the whole runway/complex in METAR and SPECI. Where prevailing wind varies significantly at different sections of the runway, multiple anemometers are recommended.	No specific provisions so long as observations are representative of relevant operational areas.	Siting will be governed by obstacle limitation surfaces and local prevailing surface wind regime. Generally speaking, if the wind field over the aerodrome is homogeneous, one strategically sited anemometer may suffice, preferably sited so as not to infringe transitional surfaces. However, depending on local conditions, it may be necessary to locate a frangible and lighted mast within the runway strip. Only in exceptional circumstances should the mast infringe the OFZ (i.e. inner transitional surface) for precision approach runways. In the latter case, the mast must be frangible, lighted and preferably shielded by an existing essential navigation aid. The site must not be affected by buildings, etc., or by aircraft operations (e.g. jet efflux during taxiing).

<i>Meteorological element observed or measured</i>	<i>Typical equipment</i>	<i>Typical dimensions of equipment</i>	<i>Operational area for which element is to be representative</i>	<i>Siting provision in Annex 3</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
RVR	Transmissometer and/or forward-scatter meter	Usually two units, transmitter and receiver. In the case of transmissometer, they are separated over baseline (length of the order of 20 m depending on range of visibilities to be assessed). Height of units approximately 2.5 m (7.5 ft) above the runway. Solid foundation plinths required.	Up to three transmissometers or forward-scatter meters per runway (i.e. runways for which RVR is required), for touchdown zone, the mid-point and stop-end of the runway.	Not more than 120 m laterally from runway centre line. For touchdown zone, mid-point and stop-end, units should be 300 m, 1 000 m and 1 500 m along runway from threshold, respectively.	Should be sited within 120 m laterally from runway centre line but not infringing the OFZ (i.e. inner transitional surface) for precision approach runways. Should be frangible structure, e.g. tubular supports and shearing bolts at foundation.
Height of cloud base	Ceilometer	Usually less than 1.5 m (5 ft) above the ground but rather solid structure including foundation plinth.	Generally representative of the runway threshold(s) in use in local routine reports and local special reports, and of the aerodrome and its vicinity in METAR and SPECI.	At a distance of less than 1 200 m (4 000 ft) before the landing threshold.	May be located within the runway strip but preferably not infringing the OFZ (i.e. inner transitional surface) for precision approach runways.
Air temperature and dew point	Thermometer	Usually less than 1.5 m (5 ft) above the ground, housed in a screen.	Representative of the aerodrome.	None.	
Atmospheric pressure	Barometer		Representative of the aerodrome.	None.	Located indoors.

#### 4. ADEQUATE INSTRUMENT EXPOSURE

4.1 On the whole, requirements for instrument exposure at aerodromes are similar to those at other (e.g. synoptic) stations.<sup>2</sup> The main requirement is for the instrument or its sensor, be it an anemometer for surface wind measurement or a thermometer for temperature measurement, to be freely exposed to atmospheric conditions. This is sometimes difficult to achieve at aerodromes where circumstances may force the meteorological instruments to be in a location where it is difficult to obtain representative measurements. At times, a meteorological station and its instruments may start out at an unobstructed site, only to be gradually surrounded by masts or buildings.

4.2 In some cases, instruments may need to be protected against non-atmospheric influences, for example, from jet aircraft exhausts. This applies particularly to wind and temperature instruments, which should not be affected by exhausts from moving or parked aircraft but should be moved to more suitable sites.

4.3 The adequate exposure of wind sensors often presents the most crucial and difficult problem in respect of instrument location at aerodromes. Further details in this respect are given in section 5, below.

4.4 As far as temperature and dew point measurements are concerned, exposure problems may occur at some aerodromes, particularly those with high temperatures and little wind. Experiments have shown that in those cases, temperatures measured over grass or in an area surrounded by vegetation may be considerably different from those experienced over the runway surface. Where those differences are found to exceed 1°C, arrangements need to be made to shift the site of the temperature measurement to one that is better exposed or use distant reading thermometers. The latter solution is now employed at an increasing number of aerodromes.

#### 5. REPRESENTATIVE MEASUREMENTS

5.1 The need for “representative” measurements arises largely because:

- a) atmospheric parameters cannot usually be measured exactly where they affect the aircraft, i.e. at or over the runway; and
- b) it would normally be impossible to carry out measurements of atmospheric parameters on a sufficiently dense scale so as to obtain an accurate picture of atmospheric conditions over the whole runway or runway complex.

5.2 As a consequence, sampling techniques are adopted which in turn are made difficult by the inhomogeneity of the atmosphere over as large an area as that covered by an aerodrome, often made more complicated by terrain features or buildings. There is, therefore, a need for well thought-out and researched sampling techniques, tailored to the needs of and conditions at individual aerodromes, which will provide measurements representing, within acceptable margins, conditions actually experienced in the area of interest. Unfortunately, experiments with surface wind measurements in a number of States have shown that it is often not possible to state what are “acceptable margins”. They are not necessarily identical to “accuracy” requirements of measurements (see Annex 3, Attachment A) with which they are sometimes confused, although accuracy requirements can be used in the case of some parameters (e.g. temperature (1°C, see 4.4)).

---

2. Annex 3, Appendix 3, 1.2, recommends that meteorological instruments at aeronautical meteorological stations be exposed, operated and maintained in accordance with the practices, procedures and specifications promulgated by World Meteorological Organization (WMO). Detailed guidance in this respect is found in the *Guide to Instruments and Methods of Observation* (WMO-No. 8).



5.3 As requirements for representative measurements depend to a considerable extent on types of aircraft and operations, close cooperation with operators is required. Frequently, it is the operators (i.e. pilots) who are the first to notice if measurements are not representative, and they should be encouraged to report such cases.

5.4 While the question of representative measurements has a temporal as well as a spatial aspect, only the latter will be considered here, although the two are sometimes interconnected. For example, it has been shown that the degree of roughness of the terrain between the location of an anemometer and the runway may affect the optimum averaging period to be used for wind observations. Spatial representativeness has a vertical and a horizontal aspect, and the two will be considered separately in the following paragraphs. The vertical aspect is partly connected with the need to provide measurements of conditions at a level or levels above the runway surface of particular relevance to aircraft landing or taking off (e.g. height of jet intake); in addition, there is the need to avoid effects of the ground and of obstacles which may influence the height at which measurements are being taken. The horizontal aspects are those which determine the number and location of instruments so as to provide satisfactory information on meteorological conditions for all operations at the aerodrome, irrespective of its size or terrain configuration.

## 5.5 Surface wind

5.5.1 The location of the sensor(s) in the vertical should be such as to provide wind information representative of conditions 10 m (30 ft) above the runway. To obtain information meeting this requirement it is essential that the sensor(s) be installed over open terrain which, in this context, is defined as terrain where any obstacles to the wind flow (buildings, trees, etc.) are at a distance corresponding to at least ten times the height of the obstruction. However, thin masts or masts of open (lattice) construction may be disregarded in such calculations.

5.5.2 The *Guide to Instruments and Methods of Observation* (WMO-No. 8) provides general guidance on what to do when normal, unobstructed exposure is not possible, including the recommended use of the following formula for reduction of wind speed to a height of 10 m (30 ft), if the sensor (while still in the open) must be placed above that height:

$$V_h = V_{10} [0.233 + 0.656 \log_{10} (h + 4.75)]$$

In this (Hellman's) formula,  $V_h$  is the wind speed at height  $h$  metres, and  $V_{10}$  is the wind speed at 10 m (30 ft) above the ground.

5.5.3 As far as providing representative measurements of surface wind in the horizontal is concerned, the size, complexity of terrain and other features of aerodromes, and the different types of runways (non-precision, precision, etc.) and operations make this particularly difficult. According to Annex 3, 4.6.1, the portions of the aerodrome, runway or runway complex for which surface wind observations should be representative are as follows:

- a) for local routine reports and local special reports used for departing aircraft:
  - 1) conditions along the runway;
- b) for local routine reports and local special reports used for arriving aircraft:
  - 1) the touchdown zone; and
- c) for METAR and SPECI:
  - 1) the whole runway (if only one); or
  - 2) the runway complex (if more than one runway).

5.5.4 With regard to the siting of wind sensors, Annex 3, Appendix 3, 4.1.1.2, stipulates that:

“Representative surface wind observations should be obtained by the use of sensors appropriately sited. Sensors for surface wind observations for local routine and special reports should be sited to give the best practicable indication of conditions along the runway and touchdown zones. At aerodromes where topography or prevalent weather conditions cause significant differences in surface wind at various sections of the runway, additional sensors should be provided.”

5.5.5 Information provided in States' aeronautical information publications shows that anemometers are generally installed in the centrefield or near the intersections of runways. At some aerodromes, anemometers are installed close to approach ends or thresholds of runways, while in a few others they are near midpoints of a runway. At an increasing number of aerodromes, multiple anemometers are provided. The case of Amsterdam/Schiphol (four sensors, one each near the threshold of a runway) is illustrated in Figure B-3, which also provides a good example of how instrument location should be indicated on aerodrome charts.

5.5.6 The foregoing shows that it is not possible to give detailed guidance on where surface wind measurements at aerodromes should be carried out and how many sensors are needed for the purpose. Conditions and requirements vary from aerodrome to aerodrome and, in many cases, only trials and experiments over periods of time will provide answers for optimum and cost-effective installations (i.e. minimum numbers of sensors to provide the information required). It is in this connection that close cooperation with aerodrome authorities and operators will be particularly necessary.

## 5.6 RVR

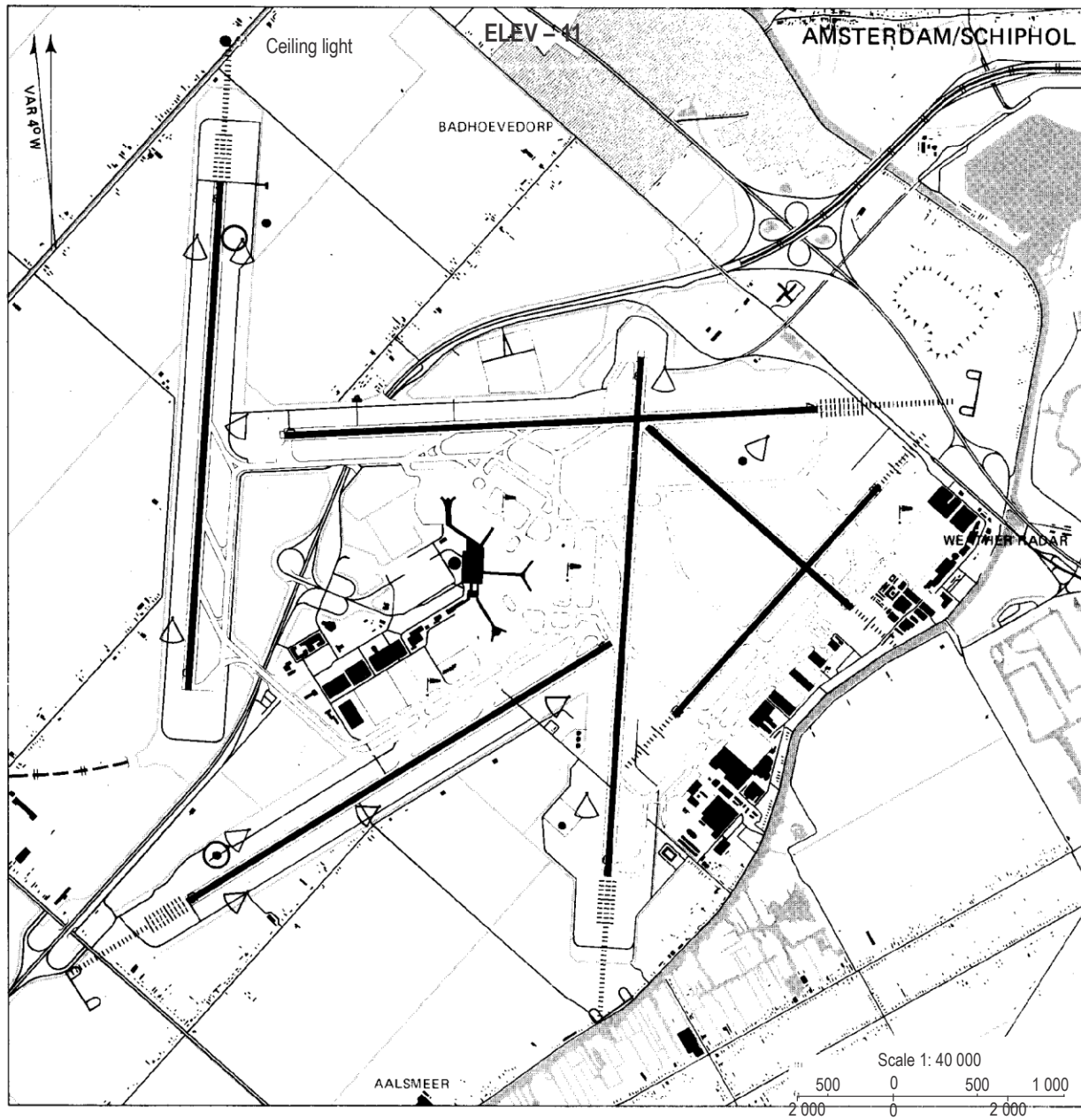
5.6.1 The height corresponding to the average eye level of a pilot in an aircraft on the ground is approximately 5 m (15 ft). Since the runway lights are at or near ground level, this implies an average height of about 2.5 m (7.5 ft) for the light path to a pilot's eye which is the height at which RVR should be assessed.

5.6.2 Forward-scatter meters may be used in addition to transmissometers; although, for calibration purposes, at least one transmissometer should be installed.

5.6.3 In respect of locations of observations, Annex 3, 4.6.3.4 calls for RVR observations to be representative of the touchdown zone, the mid-point and the stop-end of the runway. The site for observations to be representative of the touchdown zone should be located about 300 m along the runway from the threshold. The sites for observations to be representative of the mid-point and stop end of the runway should be located at a distance of between 1 000 m and 1 500 m, respectively, along the runway from the threshold and at a distance of about 300 m from the other end of the runway. The exact position of these sites and, if necessary, additional sites, should be decided after considering aeronautical, meteorological and climatological factors such as long runways, swamps and other fog-prone areas (Annex 3, Appendix 3, 4.3.1.2 refers).

5.6.4 Existing installations follow these provisions closely. All have one observation site opposite the touchdown zone, usually 300 m from the threshold, and many transmissometer systems have one to three supplementary observation sites. One of these is usually near the stop-end, which becomes the touchdown zone when the runway is used in the reverse direction.

5.6.5 When RVR measurements are made in connection with Category I operations alone, one site opposite the touchdown zone is considered to be sufficient. For Category II operations, it is mandatory to have two sensors, one at the touchdown zone and another one in the vicinity of the mid-point of the runway. For Category III operations, three sites per runway (touchdown zone, mid-point and stop-end) are required.



**LEGEND**

- ◁ Runway visual range observation site
- Cup anemometer
- Temperature observation site
- ▭ Ceilometer

**Figure B-3. Typical layout plan of meteorological instruments at an aerodrome**

5.6.6 Because visibility can vary considerably along a runway, particularly when fog is forming, useful information can be obtained from multiple transmissometers even if only Category I operations are being undertaken. To obtain timely information on formation and approach of advection fog, some States have also installed transmissometers at some distance from the aerodrome in the direction from which advection fog normally approaches.

5.6.7 As regards distance from runways, the point from which RVR assessment is made should be such as to present a minimum of hazard to aircraft, to instruments and to observers who should never be exposed to the risk of being hit by aircraft taking off or landing. However, in order that the observations may be closely representative of conditions over the runway, observation sites should be near the runway. This point is recognized in Annex 3, Appendix 3, 4.3.1.2, which indicates that it is desirable to locate the RVR observing site at a lateral distance from the runway centre line of not more than 120 m.

## 5.7 Cloud

5.7.1 Observations of the height of the cloud base should refer to the aerodrome elevation or to the threshold elevation of precision approach runways where these are 15 m (50 ft) or more below aerodrome elevation.

5.7.2 Cloud observations should, according to Annex 3, 4.6.5, be representative of the following portions of the aerodrome:

- a) for local routine reports and local special reports used for arriving aircraft:
  - 1) runway threshold(s) in use; and
- b) for METAR and SPECI:
  - 2) the aerodrome and its vicinity.

5.7.3 Ceilometers should be installed at a distance of less than 1 200 m (4 000 ft) before the landing threshold. In this context, the availability of a power supply and easy access for maintenance should be considered.

## 5.8 Air temperature and dew point temperature

5.8.1 Requirements for air temperature and dew point temperature are generally understood to refer to the average height of aircraft engines. This requirement is normally satisfied by dry and wet bulb temperature measurements in a well ventilated screen (from which the dew point temperature may be calculated).

5.8.2 Temperature measurements should be representative of the whole runway complex. As mentioned earlier under instrument exposure, this requirement may not be satisfied by normal meteorological measurements in screens in instrument enclosures. For this reason, most aerodromes have dry bulb and wet bulb thermometers located somewhere on the runway complex, usually of a distant reading type. In fact, the thermometers are often collocated with (one of the) anemometers.

## 5.9 Atmospheric pressure

5.9.1 The sensors (barometers) used for obtaining atmospheric pressure for the computation of altimeter settings are usually located inside buildings. They may be precision aneroid or mercury barometers; one mercury barometer is normally sufficient for an aerodrome, unless, as is sometimes the case, a separate barometer or altimeter is kept in the local ATS unit (normally an aerodrome control tower). If a precision aneroid barometer is used for convenience, it should be checked against the station mercury barometer at least weekly.

5.9.2 In accordance with Annex 3, Appendix 3, 4.7.2, the reference level for the computation of the QFE should be the official aerodrome elevation or, in the case of precision approach runways, and non-precision approach runways whose thresholds are 2 m (7 ft) or more below the aerodrome elevation, the relevant threshold elevation. As barometers are normally located in the aerodrome meteorological office, which is not necessarily at the reference height (i.e. aerodrome elevation or precision approach threshold), a correction has to be applied to the barometer reading to account for this height difference when computing the QFE. When installing the barometer in the aerodrome meteorological office, care should be taken to ensure the wall on which the mercury barometer is to be mounted, or the position chosen to hold a precision aneroid barometer, is not subject to vibrations, direct sunlight or draughts.

5.9.3 Another aspect to be taken into consideration is the use of air conditioning in large (or sometimes even in smaller) buildings as this creates an artificial atmosphere. In that case, the sensor should be vented to the outside atmosphere (e.g. pitot-static arrangements).

## 6. CONCLUSION

The siting of meteorological instruments at aerodromes requires close coordination between the meteorological, ATS and aerodrome authorities as well as operators. The most important practical steps to be taken in choosing appropriate locations may be summarized as follows:

- Step 1:* Ascertain the geometry of the relevant obstacle limitation surfaces at the aerodrome, particularly the transitional and inner transitional surfaces. Particular aerodromes could comprise parallel and crossing runways which complicate the geometry. Assess the type of aircraft operations at the aerodrome (e.g. visual flight rules (VFR) or instrument flight rules (IFR) traffic) and frequency of use of runways (e.g. preferred landing directions), which runways are equipped with instrument landing systems (ILS), possible noise abatement take-off directions, etc. Check the aerodrome master plan for possible plans for expansion of the aerodrome runways, taxiways, buildings, etc. Check the location and height of existing essential navigation aids such as glide path antenna, localizer, etc.
- Step 2:* Prepare a meteorological survey of the aerodrome based upon climatological statistics of the aerodrome itself or nearby observing stations. The assistance of pilots and air traffic control officers familiar with the aerodrome will be essential in this regard. In preparing the survey, account should be taken of the topography of the aerodrome and surrounding land, preferably by on-site inspection by an aeronautical meteorologist. Location and effect of swamp areas, hills, coastline, slope of runways, local industrial pollution, etc., and their possible effects on the operationally significant points around the aerodrome (touchdown zone, take-off areas, etc.) should be considered.
- Step 3:* Decide on the location of the instruments that would provide representative measurements as required by Annex 3 and, at the same time, allows for adequate exposure. Observe obstacle limitation surfaces in choosing sites as shown in Figure B-2. In particular, anemometer masts normally should be sited outside runway strips and should not infringe the transitional slope. Where it is necessary to locate them within the strip, the mast should be frangible, lighted and the site should only be as close to the runway as is absolutely essential. Unless there are exceptional local circumstances, anemometer masts should not infringe the OFZ. If the latter is necessary, then the mast must be frangible, lighted and preferably shielded by an existing essential navigation aid. Also, take into account the accessibility of the sites, and the availability of power, telephone and other lines without undue costs or interference with aerodrome use. Consideration should also be given to installing the minimum number of instruments necessary to provide representative values. This is cost-effective and ensures a minimum number of obstacles on the aerodrome.
-



## Appendix C

### REPORTING OF PREVAILING VISIBILITY USING FULLY AUTOMATIC OBSERVING SYSTEMS

(See Chapter 2, 2.3.10.7)

1. In METAR/SPECI, it is recommended that visibility be representative of the aerodrome and, where applicable, provide an indication of changes in direction. The visibility to be reported is the so-called prevailing visibility, which is defined in Annex 3 as:

**Prevailing visibility.** The greatest visibility value, observed in accordance with the definition of “visibility”, which is reached within at least half the horizon circle or within at least half of the surface of the aerodrome. These areas could comprise contiguous or non-contiguous sectors.

*Note.— This value may be assessed by human observation and/or instrumented systems. When instruments are installed, they are used to obtain the best estimate of the prevailing visibility.*

When the visibility is not the same in different directions and when the lowest visibility is different from the prevailing visibility, and 1) less than 1 500 m or 2) less than 50 per cent of the prevailing visibility and less than 5 000 m, the lowest visibility observed is also to be reported and its general direction in relation to the aerodrome indicated.

2. The advantage of having human-observed visibility using the meteorological station as a reference point is that the observation is based on an overview that covers a large volume of the atmosphere. However, there are limitations to how effectively objects or lights can be detected by the human eye. For example, as shown in Figure C-1 a), if the meteorological station and observer are located in a foggy area with a visibility of 300 m, the observer does not see anything beyond those 300 m. Without instruments, the observer therefore cannot be aware of visibility conditions beyond 300 m. The visibility representative of the whole aerodrome is therefore unknown. Conversely, if partial fog is located 2 000 m from the observer as shown in Figure C-1 b), with a visible mark at 2 000 m, the observer indicates a visibility of 2 000 m, even though visibility in the partial fog is much less (for example, 300 m indicated by a sensor).

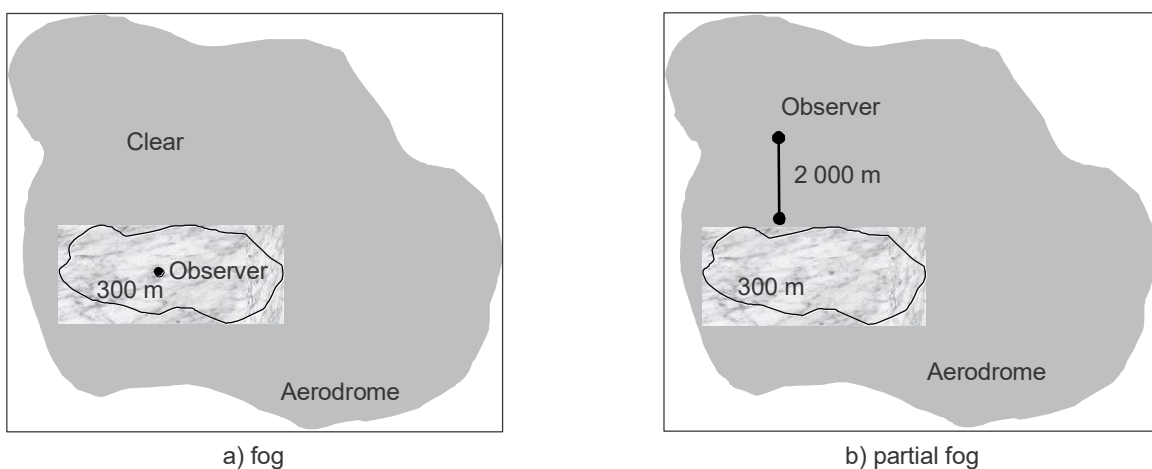


Figure C-1. Examples of observation errors

3. It is therefore important to understand that instrumented and human visibility observations are comparable only when the atmosphere is homogenous. When this is not the case, human observation and automatic observation each have their limitations. The concept of prevailing visibility, and how it may be established using automatic systems, can be explained with the aid of Table C-1 and Annex 3, Appendix 3, Table A3-2.

4. Table C-1 presents visibility values as the number of sensors increase from one to five. It is assumed that each sensor represents an equal part of the horizon circle of the aerodrome concerned. In the case of:

- a) one sensor — the prevailing visibility to be reported corresponds to the only visibility value available; no directional variations can be reported; and
- b) several sensors — the prevailing visibility corresponds to the greatest visibility reached within at least 180° of the horizon circle or within at least half of the surface of the aerodrome. The minimum visibility may also have to be reported, in accordance with the criteria in 2.3.10.8.

**Table C-1. Determining prevailing visibility with one to five sensors each representing an equal part of the horizon circle of the aerodrome**

<i>Number of sensors</i>	<i>Visibility values observed (note: V1 &gt; V2 &gt; V3 &gt; V4 &gt; V5)</i>	<i>Prevailing visibility to be reported</i>	<i>Minimum visibility (to be reported only if criteria in 2.3.10.8 are fulfilled)</i>
1	V1	V1	None
2	V1, V2	V1	V2
3	V1, V2, V3	V2	V3
4	V1, V2, V3, V4	V2	V4
5	V1, V2, V3, V4, V5	V3	V5

**Table C-2. Examples of reporting visibility in METAR and SPECI using five sensors each representing an equal part of the surface of the aerodrome**  
(Median values corresponding to prevailing visibility shown in bold)

<i>Sensor (and its location*)</i>	<i>Example 1</i>	<i>Example 2</i>	<i>Example 3</i>	<i>Example 4</i>
Sensor 1 (SE)	3 333	<b>3 333</b>	1 357	<b>3 333</b>
Sensor 2 (NW)	3 455	3 455	1 850	4 455
Sensor 3 (NE)	3 372	3 372	<b>1 900</b>	2 844
Sensor 4 (NE)	<b>3 422</b>	2 400	2 026	1 611
Sensor 5 (SW)	3 520	2 424	1 977	3 520
Values to be reported	3 400	3 300	1 900 1 300SE	3 300 1 600NE

\* With reference to the aerodrome reference point.



5. Table C-2 provides four examples of how to report visibility with automatic systems using five sensors which are located along the runways and in various sectors in relation to the aerodrome reference point as shown in column one.

- a) Example 1 demonstrates a straightforward case whereby measurements from all of the sensors are similar to each other; hence, the visibility around such an aerodrome would be homogeneous. In this case, the median value ( $V_3 = 3\,422\text{ m}$ ) should be taken as the prevailing visibility and would be reported as  $3\,400\text{ m}$ .
- b) Example 2 demonstrates a situation whereby the five sensor readings are split into two groups, i.e. three readings in the range  $3\,300\text{ m}$  to  $3\,500\text{ m}$  and two readings in the range  $2\,400\text{ m}$  and  $2\,500\text{ m}$ . However, as it is assumed that all the sensors cover an equal area of aerodrome, the definition of prevailing visibility suggests that the visibility would still be reported as the median value ( $V_3 = 3\,333\text{ m}$  which would be reported as  $3\,300\text{ m}$ ).
- c) Examples 3 and 4 demonstrate situations whereby both the prevailing visibility and the minimum visibility should be reported. Example 3 contains a series of measurements including one measurement below the critical value of  $1\,500\text{ m}$ . In this case, the prevailing visibility should be reported as  $1\,900\text{ m}$  (the median value  $V_3$ ) with a minimum visibility also reported at  $1\,300\text{ m}$ . Example 4 shows a similar situation whereby the lowest reading of  $1\,611\text{ m}$  is less than 50 per cent of the prevailing visibility value of  $3\,333\text{ m}$  (the median value  $V_3$ ). In this case both the prevailing visibility and the minimum visibility should be reported as  $3\,300\text{ m}$  and  $1\,600\text{ m}$ , respectively.

6. The examples presented in Table C-2 are based on the assumption that each of the sensors used represents an equal part of the aerodrome concerned (e.g. 20 per cent each) and therefore carries an equal weighting in any calculations made. In some cases, the local climatology of the aerodrome may indicate that sensors may be representative of fog-prone areas or simply may represent more operationally significant parts of the aerodrome. Such considerations should be carried out on an individual basis. In these cases, it would be necessary to establish the percentage of the area of the aerodrome that is nominally to be represented by each sensor. Following this, the prevailing visibility can be derived using its definition which requires that the prevailing visibility is the greatest visibility value which is reached at least within half of the surface of the aerodrome.

7. Annex 3 provisions also state that when the visibility is fluctuating rapidly, and prevailing visibility cannot be determined, only the lowest visibility should be reported. This case applies only for visibility assessed by a human observer since, with automatic systems, it is always possible to determine prevailing visibility.

---



## Appendix D

### CRITERIA FOR TREND FORECASTS

(See Chapter 3, 3.5.3)

<i>Element</i>	<i>Observed value (given in report)</i>	<i>Trend forecasts to be issued when one or more of the following changes are expected</i>	
1. Surface wind	Mean speed	Change in direction	Mean speed before and/or after the change in direction
1.1	Less than 5 m/s (10 kt)	60° or more	5 m/s (10 kt) or more
1.2	5 m/s (10 kt) or more	60° or more	Any speed
1.3	Any speed	Changes through values of operational significance*	
1.4	Any speed	Change in mean speed 5 m/s (10 kt) or more	
2. Visibility		Visibility reaching or passing any of the following values: 150 m 350 m 600 m 800 m 1 500 m 3 000 m 5 000 m**	
3. Weather			
3.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— freezing precipitation</li> <li>— moderate or heavy precipitation (including showers)</li> <li>— duststorm or sandstorm</li> <li>— thunderstorm (with precipitation)</li> <li>— other weather phenomena given in Table 2-6 as agreed between the meteorological authority, the ATS authority and the operators concerned</li> </ul>	Onset, cessation or change in intensity	

<i>Element</i>	<i>Observed value (given in report)</i>	<i>Trend forecasts to be issued when one or more of the following changes are expected</i>		
3.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— freezing fog</li> <li>— low drifting dust, sand or snow</li> <li>— blowing dust, sand or snow</li> <li>— thunderstorm (without precipitation)</li> <li>— squall</li> <li>— funnel cloud (tornado or water spout)</li> </ul>	Onset or cessation		
4. Cloud	Amount	Initial height of base	Amount	Change in height of base
4.1	BKN or OVC	Below 450 m (1 500 ft) and expected to lift	BKN or OVC	Changing to, or passing through, any one of the following values:  30 m (100 ft) 60 m (200 ft) 150 m (500 ft) 300 m (1 000 ft) 450 m (1 500 ft)
4.2	BKN or OVC	At or above 30 m (100 ft) and expected to lower	BKN or OVC	Passing through any of the following values:  30 m (100 ft) 60 m (200 ft) 150 m (500 ft) 300 m (1 000 ft) 450 m (1 500 ft)
4.3	NSC, FEW or SCT	Below 450 m (1 500 ft)	BKN or OVC	Any height of cloud
4.4	BKN or OVC	Below 450 m (1 500 ft)	NSC, FEW or SCT	Any height of cloud
4.5	NSC, FEW or SCT	At or above 450 m (1 500 ft)	BKN or OVC	Below 450 m (1 500 ft)
4.6	BKN or OVC	At or above 450 m (1 500 ft)	NSC, FEW or SCT	Below 450 m (1 500 ft)

<i>Element</i>	<i>Observed value (given in report)</i>	<i>Trend forecasts to be issued when one or more of the following changes are expected</i>		
5. Vertical visibility (at aerodromes where such observations are available)	Sky expected to become or remain obscured			Vertical visibility passing through any of the following values:  30 m (100 ft) 60 m (200 ft) 150 m (500 ft) 300 m (1 000 ft)
<p>* The threshold values considered to be of operational significance are to be established by the meteorological authority in consultation with the appropriate ATS authority and the operators concerned, taking into account changes in the wind which would require a change in the runway(s) in use, and/or which would indicate that the runway tailwind or crosswind component will change through values representing the main operating limits for typical aircraft operating at the aerodrome.</p> <p>** 5 000 m is also used as a criterion when significant numbers of flights are conducted in accordance with visual flight rules.</p>				

*Note.— Additional criteria may be agreed between the meteorological authority and the operators concerned based on local operating minima.*

---



## **Appendix E**

### **NOTIFYING WAFCS OF SIGNIFICANT DISCREPANCIES**

*(See Chapter 3, 3.7.3.7)*

#### **1. PURPOSE OF THE REPORT**

The purpose of the report is to:

- a) enable the aerodrome meteorological offices to inform the WAFCs about significant discrepancies between observed conditions and SIGWX forecasts issued by WAFCs, in accordance with Annex 3 criteria (see Annex 3, Appendix 2, 2.2); and
- b) report significant discrepancies efficiently and unambiguously.

#### **2. BENEFITS OF THE REPORT**

A WAFc benefits from being informed because the report:

- a) provides valuable feedback on the content of the forecasts;
- b) enables forecasters to take feedback into account in future forecasts; and
- c) enables formal review of the quality of WAFc output, if necessary.

#### **3. STEPS TO BE FOLLOWED BY AN AERODROME METEOROLOGICAL OFFICE**

The process for notifying a WAFc of significant discrepancies is as follows:

- a) WAFS SIGWX forecast is received by an aerodrome meteorological office;
- b) the aerodrome meteorological office detects a significant discrepancy in accordance with the criteria for the amendment of SIGWX forecasts in Annex 3 (see Annex 3, Appendix 2, 2.2);
- c) the aerodrome meteorological office describes the significant discrepancy using the following rules:
  - 1) a notification of significant discrepancy concerning a forecast should be sent no later than 24 hours after the end of the validity period of the forecast, if possible;
  - 2) the notification is to be sent only to the WAFc concerned;
  - 3) the notification is to be sent via e-mail using the following e-mail addresses:

Centre	E-mail address
WAFC Washington	<a href="mailto:wifs.admin@noaa.gov">wifs.admin@noaa.gov</a>
WAFC London	<a href="mailto:servicedesk@metoffice.gov.uk">servicedesk@metoffice.gov.uk</a> and <a href="mailto:sma@metoffice.gov.uk">sma@metoffice.gov.uk</a>

*Note.— Any correspondence with WAFC London to be clearly marked with the following text: “For the attention of WAFC London forecasters.”*

- 4) the notification of significant discrepancies is to be prepared using the form in the attachment to this appendix;
- 5) the notification is to be written in English.

#### **4. STEPS TO BE FOLLOWED BY A WAFC**

The WAFC concerned acknowledges the receipt of the notification of the significant discrepancy to the aerodrome meteorological office that originated it, together with a brief comment on any action taken.

— — — — —



**Attachment to Appendix E**

**FORM TO BE USED FOR THE NOTIFICATION OF A SIGNIFICANT DISCREPANCY ON  
SIGNIFICANT WEATHER FORECASTS**

**FORECAST INVOLVED**

Originating WAFC	
Flight Level	
Validity Time	
Validity Date	

**DESCRIPTION OF THE SIGNIFICANT DISCREPANCY(IES)**

<i>Discrepancy type:</i>	<i>Yes/No</i>
Error in position of forecast phenomena	
Error in intensity of forecast phenomena	
Significant phenomena observed which is not present in the SIGWX forecast	
Other	

<i>Phenomena type<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>WAFC forecast</i>			<i>Observed phenomena</i>			
	<i>FL</i>	<i>Position</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>FL</i>	<i>Position</i>	<i>Intensity</i>	<i>Reference<sup>2</sup></i>

1 Hazardous phenomena as specified in Annex 3, Appendix 2, 1.3.3.

2 The column "Reference" is to specify, for example, the observation or aircraft report that directed the aerodrome meteorological office to inform of a significant discrepancy. A copy of this information may be added to the form, if necessary.



## Appendix F

# USE OF OPMET INFORMATION FOR PRE-FLIGHT PLANNING BY OPERATORS AND FLIGHT CREW MEMBERS

(See Chapter 5, 5.1)

### 1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 The OPMET information to be supplied to operators and flight crew members is covered in Chapter 9 of Annex 3 and in Chapter 5 of this manual. The purpose of this appendix is to provide aeronautical meteorologists and assistants with a basic understanding of the significance each item of information used in pre-flight planning has in the preparation for a flight. Although re-planning is often carried out in flight (e.g. when considering the acceptance of a different flight level, an alternative airway routing offered by air traffic control or a change of destination), the use made of the meteorological information required for such re-planning is similar to that in pre-flight planning.

1.2 Flight preparation has three phases: the take-off and climb to cruise altitude; the cruise to top of descent; and the approach and landing. These phases are not treated separately as they are interdependent, but for explanatory purposes, it is convenient to consider the specific use made of meteorological information in each of the three phases.

### 2. TAKE-OFF AND CLIMB TO CRUISE ALTITUDE

#### 2.1 General

2.1.1 It is the pilot's duty to optimize the performance of the aircraft in order to maximize the economics of the operation while complying with all the requirements for take-off (including take-off minima) specified by the operator and approved by the State of the Operator and by the authority responsible for the aerodrome. The planning for the take-off and climb phase includes calculating, by the pilot, the maximum permissible take-off mass (standard operating mass + passengers + cargo + fuel, etc.) given the constraints at a particular aerodrome. These constraints include runway length, runway slope, climb-out gradients (which ensure clearance of obstacles with one engine failed), aerodrome elevation, and current meteorological conditions, i.e. surface wind (specifically headwind component and limiting tailwind and crosswind components), temperature and pressure. Humidity, although theoretically also affecting aircraft performance, can be neglected as its effect is minimal. Runway contamination (snow or slush covered, wet, icy, etc.) also plays an important role, but is not usually regarded as "meteorological information". Where aircraft take-off mass is not limited by aircraft performance considerations in the prevailing meteorological conditions, temperature has an effect on take-off speeds and on engine power settings and on the possible need to initiate engine and airframe anti-ice procedures.

2.1.2 The list of items that have to be considered in take-off calculations is rendered more manageable by the use of graphs, charts, nomograms, tables, etc., produced by the operator to assist the pilot or flight operations officer. In many operations, flight planning, particularly for the en-route stage, is carried out by computer. The pilot is able to control at least some of the many variables affecting the take-off performance of the aircraft; one example would be the choice of flap setting, another would be the cargo mass and/or fuel to be uplifted, although clearly the desire is to maximize the payload consistent with take-off requirements. Any of the various requirements may limit the operation, resulting in a lower payload or fuel uplift than desired, which may result in the need to land en-route in order to refuel or, in extreme circumstances, preclude take-off (at a given mass) altogether.

## 2.2 Surface wind

2.2.1 The magnitude of the effects of meteorological parameters on take-off performance varies with aircraft type, although the sense of the effect (positive or negative) is the same. Headwinds will permit a greater mass to be lifted on take-off, as the presence of a headwind will permit a higher airspeed to be achieved on the runway and, therefore, more lift to be generated by the aerodynamic surfaces. In contrast, a tailwind results in the reduction of the maximum permissible take-off mass as a lower airspeed is achieved. Otherwise expressed, headwinds permit more weight to be lifted on take-off, while tailwinds decrease the maximum permissible take-off weight.

2.2.2 The following are some examples that indicate the magnitudes of the above effects. An example expressed in terms of mass would be that for each knot increase in headwind component, an Airbus A300 can lift some 400 kg more mass on take-off. For a Boeing 767-300, the increase would be around 220 kg for the same increase in headwind component. In addition to the headwind/tailwind component, consideration must also be given to the crosswind component. Each aircraft has crosswind limits (for large jet transports, typically between 15 kt and 35 kt for different runway conditions, e.g. wet or icy, or dry), beyond which it is very difficult for the pilot to maintain aircraft alignment along the runway, particularly in the case of an engine failure.

## 2.3 Temperature

2.3.1 Temperature affects air density; higher temperatures cause a decrease in density which reduces lift; hence, maximum permissible take-off mass. Temperature also has detrimental effects on engine efficiency; hence, attainable speeds. Lower temperatures have the opposite effect.

2.3.2 A temperature rise of 10°C can, for a B737, reduce the permissible take-off mass by 600 kg. A decrease in temperature allows an increase in permissible take-off mass. In the case of the A310, for each degree that the temperature is below reference, the mass can be increased by 210 kg, all other factors being equal. Temperature also has an effect on the relationship between true airspeed and the airspeed indicated in the cockpit (indicated airspeed). Therefore, high ambient temperatures mean that for a given indicated airspeed the true airspeed is higher and the kinetic energy to be absorbed by the brakes and tires after landing or an abandoned take-off is also greater. Landing an aircraft on a short runway or abandoning take-off from high speed requires the aircraft brakes to absorb extremely large amounts of kinetic energy which, in turn, results in the brake assembly being heated to such high temperatures that brake cooling times as long as one hour could be necessary. The cooling time depends on, among other things, the outside air temperature. Flight crew are provided with nomograms to calculate this effect.

## 2.4 Pressure

2.4.1 Pressure also affects air density; the lower the surface pressure, the lower the air density and the lower the lift and the poorer the engine performance (and vice versa).

2.4.2 For a B767-300 a 10 hPa pressure change at a sea level aerodrome has about the same effect as a 3°C temperature change. Similarly, for each hectopascal that the pressure rises above 1 013.2 hPa, an additional 150 kg can be carried by an Airbus A300.

## 2.5 Combined effects of surface wind, temperature and pressure

Figure F-1 illustrates the combined effects of the above-mentioned parameters on take-off performance, and Figure F-2 gives a sample illustration of an actual take-off mass versus runway length calculation.

## 3. CRUISE TO TOP OF DESCENT

### 3.1 General

The meteorological parameters of importance in the preparation of flight plans for the cruise phase of flights consist in the first instance of upper-air temperatures and upper winds. Weather conditions en-route and meteorological conditions at destination and at destination alternate and en-route alternate aerodromes also play an important role.

### 3.2 Temperature

As in the case of take-off performance, temperature is an important element in flight planning because, by affecting air density, it influences engine performance, fuel efficiency, true airspeed, and aircraft operating ceilings and optimum cruising levels, irrespective of aircraft type (piston, jet, etc.). For early types of jet engines, fuel consumption increased by about 1 per cent for each degree Celsius rise in temperature above standard. For wide-bodied aircraft, the engines of which are more powerful and fuel efficient, fuel consumption increases only by about 3 per cent for each 10°C temperature increase. However, as fuel constitutes about 30 per cent of the total take-off mass of modern jets which can exceed 200 tonnes, this means that some 2 tonnes of additional fuel may be required for a 10°C temperature rise. For a given aircraft mass, temperature together with wind determines the flight level at which fuel efficiency and range (with a given cruise speed) will be at an optimum. Figure F-3 illustrates the effects of various temperature deviations from standard temperature on optimum flight levels for a B737 aircraft.

### 3.3 Upper winds

Upper winds have an even more obvious effect on aircraft efficiency, decreasing or increasing flight time and consequently decreasing or increasing fuel consumption (if same ground speed is to be maintained). With wide-bodied jet aircraft, a 50 kt headwind decreases the range of the aircraft by about 11 per cent at best cruise speed; a tailwind has the reverse effect. For flight planning, the effects of wind components are usually calculated in terms of equivalent still air distance which is as follows:

$$\text{equivalent still air distance} = \frac{\text{TAS}}{\text{TAS} \pm \text{wind component}}$$

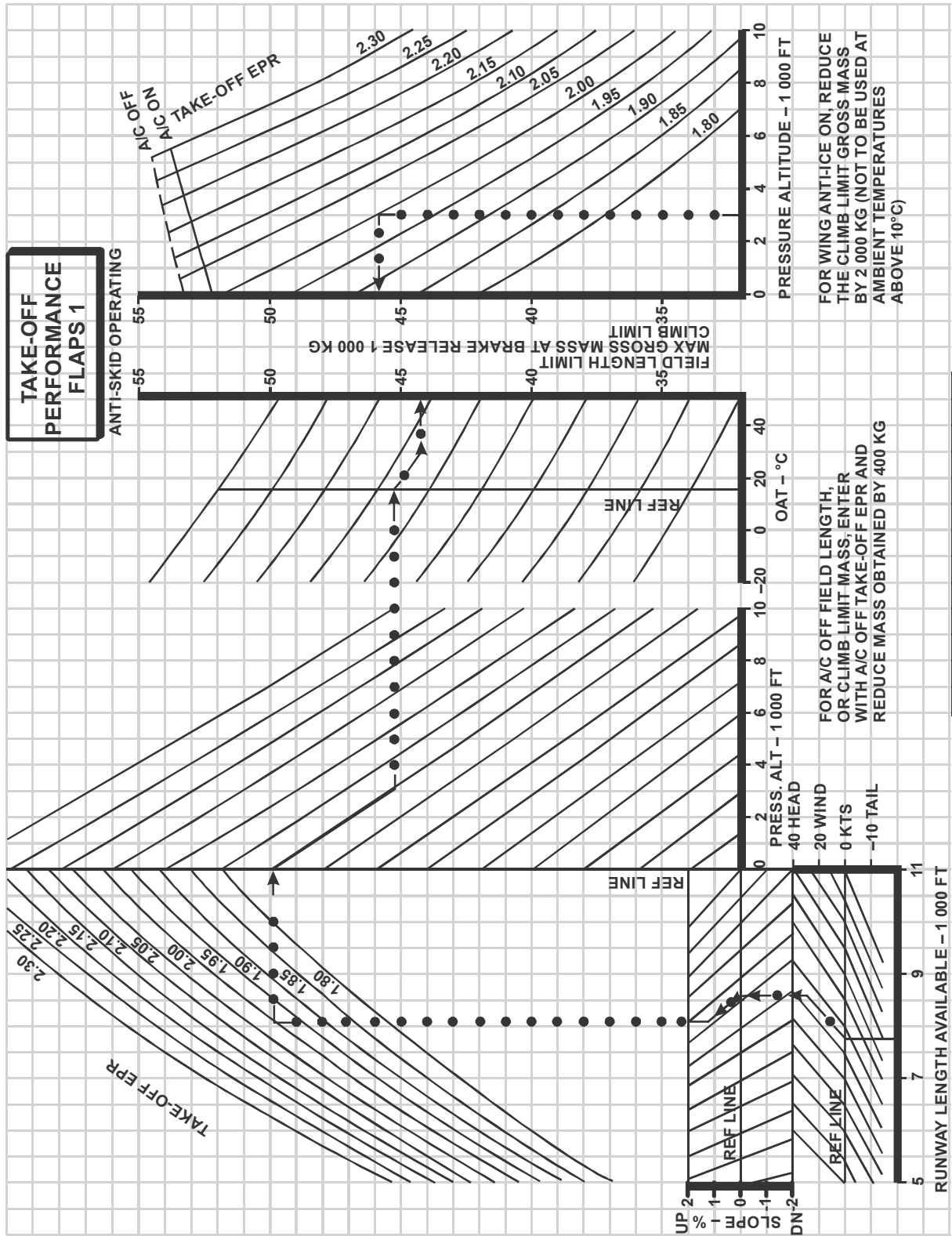


Figure F-1. Effects of meteorological parameters on take-off performance

Calculation for maximum permissible take-off mass (for DC-8)

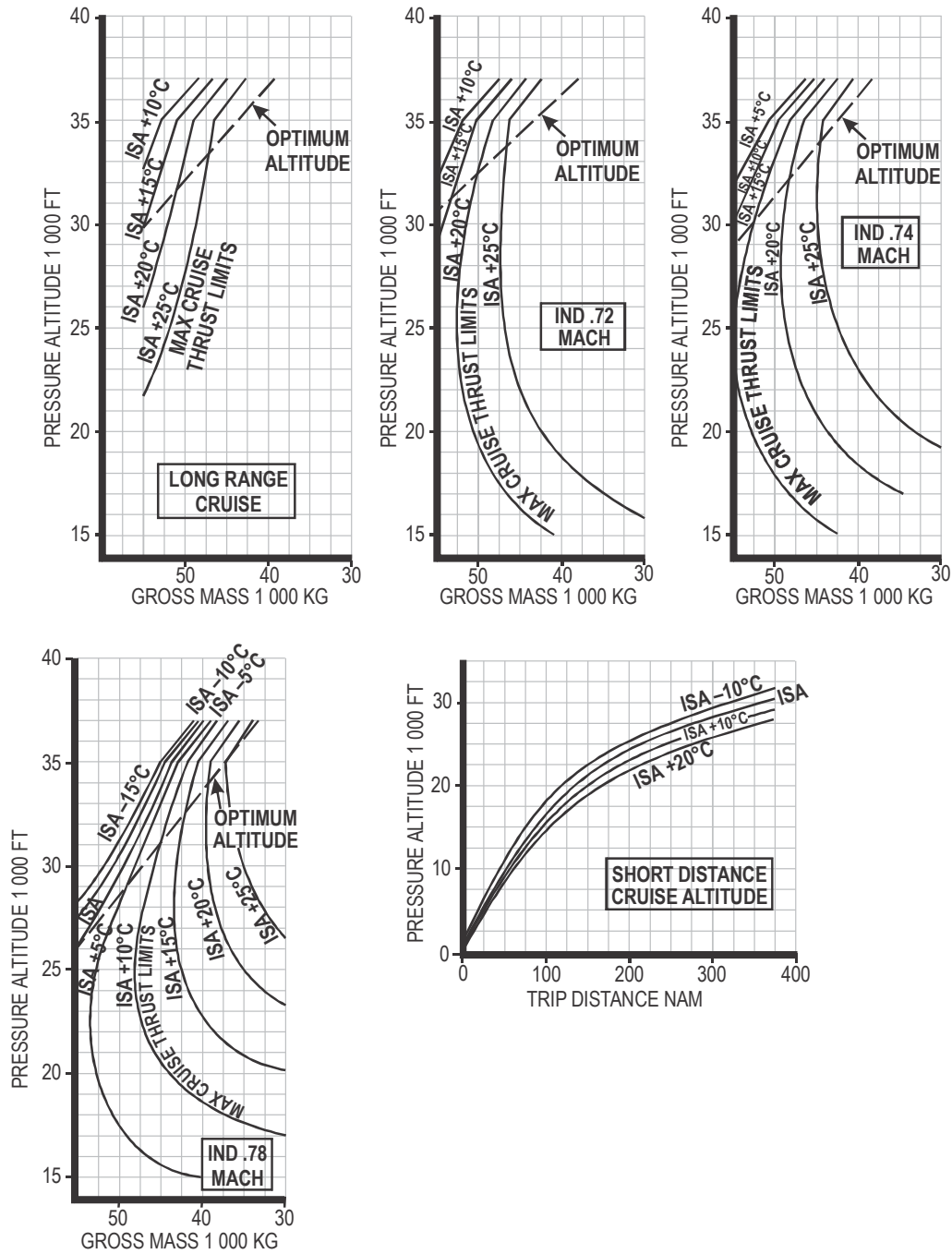
Type of A/C	Condition	RW	OAT	Wind	Wc	QNH	Depth of slush etc.	Braking action
DC-8-62								
Flight/Date	Estimated	22R	+2°C	230° 10 kt	-10	1005	1.0 cm slush	POOR
Airport	Actual							
Calculation								
Flaps		23°						
TOW versus RW and OBSTACLES	Gross mass					165.6		
	Rating/intermix (not DC-8)		—		+			+
	OAT correction (27 × 270)		—		+	7.3		+
	Wind correction (10 × 330)		—		+	3.3		+
	QNH correction (8 × 160)		—	1.3		+		+
	Ice protection (not 747) ENG.		—	—		+	176.2	
	Rain removal (DC-8 only) ON		—	0.7				
	Frost/ice on tanks (not 747)		—	—				
	Water, slush, snow	Equation runway-short. 620 m						
	Braking action	600 m						
	Runway-shortening	m						
	Systems U/S	m						
	Sum of equation runway-short.	1 220 m	—	31.0				
Sum of negative corrections		—	33.0	→	—	33.0	→	—
<b>TOW versus RW and OBSTACLES</b>	①					143.2		
Climb requirement limited mass	Climb requirement limited mass					162.5		
	Rating/intermix (not DC-8)		—		+			+
	OAT correction (13 × 600)		—		+	7.8		+
	QNH correction (8 × 160)		—	1.3		+		+
	Ice protection (not 747) ENG.		—	0.5		+	170.3	+
	Rain removal (DC-8 only) ON		—	1.3				
	Frost/ice on tanks (not 747)		—	—				
	Sum of negative corrections		—	3.1	→	—	3.1	→
<b>CLIMB REQUIREMENT LIMITED MASS</b>	②					167.2		
PERFORMANCE LIM. TOW For decision of derating	Min of ① & ②					143.2		
NEVER EXCEED MASS	③					152.0		
MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE TOW	Min of ① ② ③					143.2		

Figure F-2. Sample of an actual take-off mass calculation

**ALTITUDE  
CAPABILITY**



**OPERATIONS MANUAL**



**Figure F-3. Optimum flight level (for B737) as a function of take-off mass and temperature deviation from standard**



An example of a graph used for this calculation is given in Figure F-4. This figure illustrates the effects of wind components, sometimes called “equivalent headwinds”, on aircraft performance. In this connection, it should be noted that the wind component used in the still air distance equation does not take into account only headwind or tailwind components but also the effect of crosswinds. The equivalent still air distance is then used to calculate the fuel required for the flight, including necessary reserves.

### 3.4 Meteorological conditions

3.4.1 Meteorological conditions en-route and meteorological conditions at destination and alternate aerodromes are elements that are superimposed on the initial flight plan based on temperature and wind. Adverse en-route weather conditions may force the choice of a flight level or route segment not conforming with the optimum one given by the flight plan, although such changes are rare with modern jet aircraft. Unfavourable conditions expected at a destination may force a delay in take-off or the preparation of additional flight plan segments to alternate aerodromes.

3.4.2 During flight, pilots may wish to optimize aircraft performance by taking advantage of more favourable winds at another flight level. This situation may arise because initially the aircraft was unable to climb to this level due to air traffic control constraints, or it was too heavy to climb to the level with the most favourable tailwinds. As the aircraft mass progressively decreases as fuel is burned off, the pilot may request reclearance to a higher level. The information available to the pilot in considering these matters is greatly enhanced by the increased use of an on-board inertial reference system, which is capable of giving instantaneous wind readouts. Many systems also give information on the increased headwind that can be tolerated by going to a higher level so as to take advantage of the decreased fuel consumption normally found at higher flight levels. This is usually referred to as a “wind/altitude trade”.

## 4. APPROACH AND LANDING

4.1 For landing there are two basic considerations: the length of the runway and missed approach capability. The speed flown by the aircraft on approach is a function of the stall speed which is determined by the aircraft mass, all other things being equal. The speed on touchdown will be the indicated airspeed flown plus or minus the headwind/tailwind. The presence of a headwind means that the aircraft will land at a lower ground speed and will therefore use less distance to stop. The opposite effect is felt with a tailwind. The stopping distance on the runway is also affected by the runway being wet, as brakes are less effective in these conditions. In addition, aircraft have tailwind and crosswind limits, and again these are lower in wet conditions than in dry; typical limits are shown in Figure F-5.

4.2 For the missed approach possibility the same factors as runway length must be considered, e.g. temperature and pressure-altitude. Also, when icing conditions are present, ice formation on the wing and fuselage will adversely affect performance. A chart illustrating the effect of relevant meteorological factors on landing performance, including climb capability for a missed approach procedure, is given in Figure F-6.

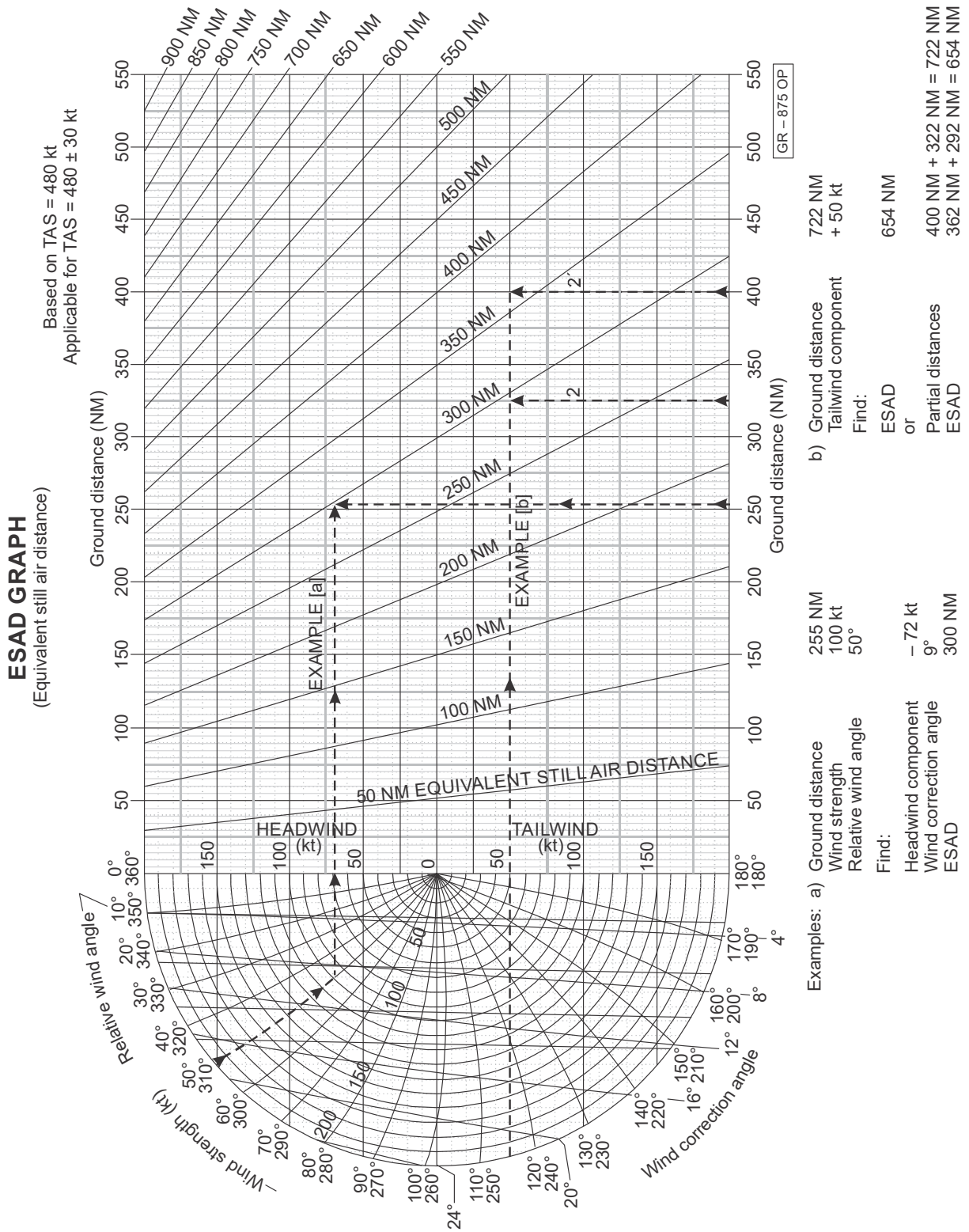


Figure F-4. The effects of wind on aircraft performance

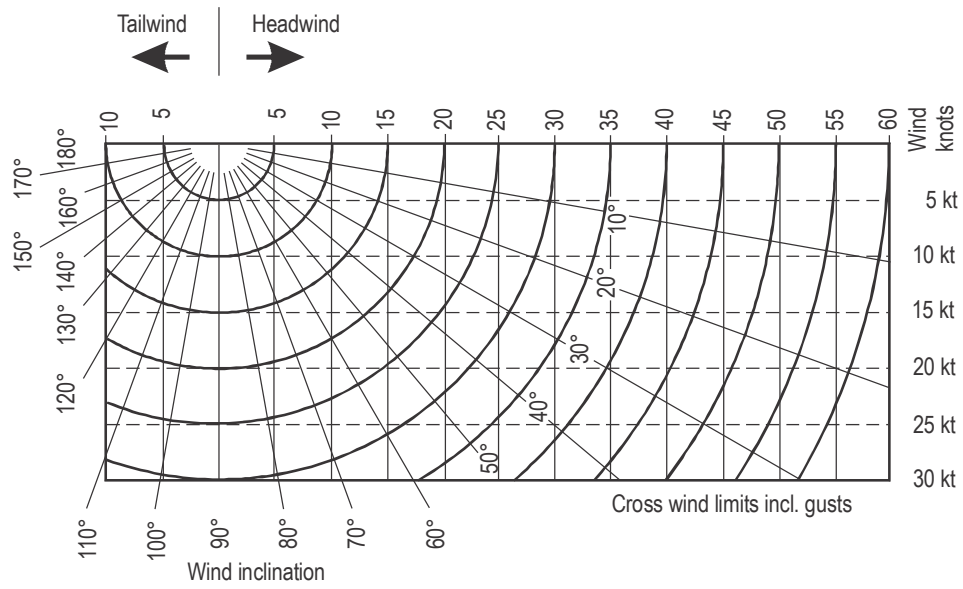


Figure F-5. Typical wind limit diagram

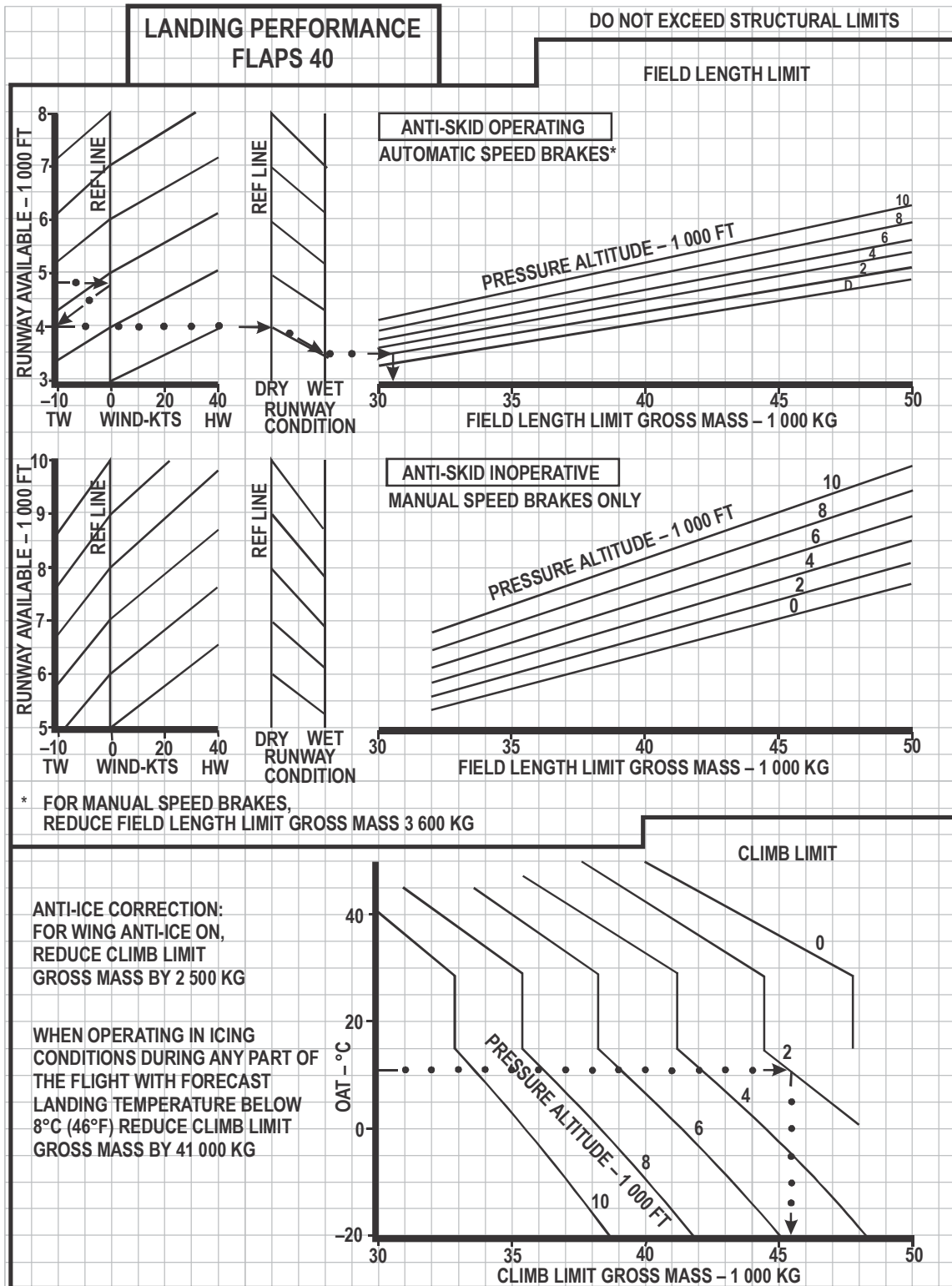


Figure F-6. Landing performance calculations

## Appendix G

### COMMONLY USED ABBREVIATIONS IN METEOROLOGICAL MESSAGES

(See Chapter 5, 5.2.2)

(extract from the Procedures for Air Navigation Services —  
ICAO Abbreviations and Codes (PANS-ABC, Doc 8400))

*Note.— Decodes of the abbreviations should be applied in phraseologies used in meteorological briefings and consultations.*

#### A

AAA	(or AAB, AAC ... etc., in sequence) Amended meteorological message (message type designator)
ABV	Above
ADS-C†	Automatic dependent surveillance — contract
AFTN‡	Aeronautical fixed telecommunication network
AIREP†	Air-report
AIRMET†	Information concerning en-route weather phenomena which may affect the safety of low-level aircraft operations
ALT	Altitude
AMD	Amend or amended (used to indicate amended meteorological message; message type designator)
APCH	Approach
ASHTAM	Special series NOTAM notifying by means of a specific format change in activity of a volcano, a volcanic eruption and/or volcanic ash cloud that is of significance to aircraft operations
AT...	At (followed by time at which weather change is forecast to occur)
ATS	Air traffic services

#### B

BCFG	Fog patches
BECMG	Becoming
BKN	Broken
BL ...	Blowing (followed by DU = dust, SA = sand or SN = snow)
BLW	Below ...
BR	Mist
BTN	Between
BUFR	Binary universal form for the representation of meteorological data

## C

... C	Centre ( <i>preceded by runway designation number to identify a parallel runway</i> )
C	Degrees Celsius ( <i>Centigrade</i> )
CALM <sup>^</sup>	Calm
CAT	Clear air turbulence
CAVOK <sup>†</sup>	( <i>to be pronounced "KAV-OH-KAY"</i> ) Visibility, cloud and present weather better than prescribed values or conditions
CB <sup>‡</sup>	( <i>to be pronounced "CEE BEE"</i> ) Cumulonimbus
CCA	( <i>or CCB, CCC ... etc., in sequence</i> ) Corrected meteorological message ( <i>message type designator</i> )
CLD	Cloud
CLIMB-OUT	Climb-out area
COR	Correct or correction or corrected ( <i>used to indicate corrected meteorological message; message type designator</i> )
CPDLC <sup>‡</sup>	Controller-pilot data link communications
CTA	Control area
CU	Cumulus

## D

D	Downward ( <i>tendency in RVR during previous 10 minutes</i> )
DEG	Degrees
DEPO	Deposition
DIF	Diffuse
DP	Dew point temperature
DR ...	Low drifting ( <i>followed by DU = dust, SA = sand or SN = snow</i> )
DS	Duststorm
DU	Dust
D-VOLMET	Data link VOLMET
DZ	Drizzle

## E

E	East or eastern longitude
EMBD	Embedded in a layer ( <i>to indicate cumulonimbus embedded in layers of other clouds</i> )
END	Stop-end ( <i>related to RVR</i> )
EQN	Equatorial latitudes northern hemisphere
EQS	Equatorial latitudes southern hemisphere
EXER	Exercises or exercising or to exercise

## F

FBL	Light ( <i>used to indicate the intensity of weather phenomena, interference or static reports, e.g. FBL RA = light rain</i> )
FC	Funnel cloud ( <i>tornado or water spout</i> )

FCST	Forecast
FEW	Few
FG	Fog
FIR‡	Flight information region
FL	Flight level
FLUC	Fluctuating or fluctuation or fluctuated
FM ...	From ( <i>followed by time weather change is forecast to begin</i> )
FRONT†	Front ( <i>relating to weather</i> )
FT	Feet ( <i>dimensional unit</i> )
FU	Smoke
FZ	Freezing
FZDZ	Freezing drizzle
FZFG	Freezing fog
FZRA	Freezing rain

## G

G ...	Variations from the mean wind speed (gusts) ( <i>followed by figures in METAR/SPECI and TAF</i> )
GAIN	Airspeed or headwind gain
GAMET	Area forecast for low-level flights
GR	Hail
GRIB	Processed meteorological data in the form of grid point values expressed in binary form ( <i>in meteorological code</i> )
GS	Small hail and/or snow pellets

## H

H	High pressure area or the centre of high pressure
HNH	High latitudes northern hemisphere
HPA	Hectopascal
HR	Hours
HSH	High latitudes southern hemisphere
HURCN	Hurricane
HVY	Heavy ( <i>used to indicate the intensity of weather phenomena, e.g. HVY RA = heavy rain</i> )
HZ	Haze

## I

IAWW <sup>^</sup>	International airways volcano watch
ICE	Icing
INC	In cloud
INTSF	Intensify or intensifying
ISOL	Isolated

**K**

KM	Kilometres
KMH	Kilometres per hour
KT	Knots

**L**

L	Low pressure area <i>or</i> the centre of low pressure
LAT	Latitude
LCA	Local <i>or</i> locally <i>or</i> location <i>or</i> located
LINE	Line ( <i>used in SIGMET</i> )
LONG	Longitude
LOSS	Airspeed <i>or</i> headwind loss
LTD	Limited
LVL	Level
LYR	Layer <i>or</i> layered

**M**

... M	Metres ( <i>preceded by figures</i> )
M ...	Minimum value of runway visual range ( <i>followed by figures in METAR/SPECI</i> )
MAX	Maximum
MBST	Microburst
MET <sup>†</sup>	Meteorological <i>or</i> meteorology
METAR <sup>†</sup>	Aerodrome routine meteorological report ( <i>in meteorological code</i> )
MET REPORT	Local routine meteorological report ( <i>in abbreviated plain language</i> )
MID	Mid-point ( <i>related to RVR</i> )
MIFG	Shallow fog
MNH	Middle latitudes northern hemisphere
MNM	Minimum
MOD	Moderate ( <i>used to indicate the intensity of weather phenomena, interference <i>or</i> static reports, e.g. MODRA = moderate rain</i> )
MOV	Move <i>or</i> moving <i>or</i> movement
MS	Minus
MSH	Middle latitudes southern hemisphere
MSL	Mean sea level
MT	Mountain
MTW	Mountain waves
MWO	Meteorological watch office

**N**

N	No distinct tendency ( <i>in RVR during previous 10 minutes</i> )
N	North <i>or</i> northern latitude
NC	No change



NE	North-east
NIL*†	None <i>or</i> I have nothing to send to you
NM	Nautical miles
NOSIG†	No significant change ( <i>used in trend-type landing forecasts</i> )
NOTAM†	A notice distributed by means of telecommunication containing information concerning the establishment, condition or change in any aeronautical facility, service, procedure or hazard, the timely knowledge of which is essential to personnel concerned with flight operations
NR	number
NSC	Nil significant cloud
NSW	Nil significant weather
NW	North-west
NXT	Next

## O

OBS	Observe <i>or</i> observed <i>or</i> observation
OBSC	Obscure <i>or</i> obscured <i>or</i> obscuring
OCNL	Occasional <i>or</i> occasionally
OPMET†	Operational meteorological ( <i>information</i> )
OVC	Overcast

## P

P ...	Maximum value of wind speed or runway visual range ( <i>followed by figures in METAR/SPECI and TAF</i> )
PL	Ice pellets
PO	Dust/sand whirls ( <i>dust devils</i> )
PRFG	Aerodrome partially covered by fog
PROB†	Probability
PS	Plus
PSN	Position
PSYS	Pressure system(s)

## Q

QFE‡	Atmospheric pressure at aerodrome elevation ( <i>or at runway threshold</i> )
QNH‡	Altimeter sub-scale setting to obtain elevation when on the ground

## R

R ...	Runway ( <i>followed by figures in METAR/SPECI</i> )
RA	Rain
RAG	Ragged
RE	Recent ( <i>used to qualify weather phenomena, e.g. RERA = recent rain</i> )
RNAV†	( <i>to be pronounced "AR-NAV"</i> ) Area navigation

ROBEX <sup>†</sup>	Regional OPMET bulletin exchange ( <i>scheme</i> )
RPLC	Replace or replaced
RRA	(or RRB, RRC ... etc., in sequence) Delayed meteorological message (message type designator)
RTD	Delayed ( <i>used to indicate delayed meteorological message; message type designator</i> )
RVR <sup>‡</sup>	Runway visual range
RWY	Runway

## S

S	South or southern latitude
S ...	State of the sea ( <i>followed by figures in METAR/SPECI</i> )
SA	Sand
SCT	Scattered
SE	South-east
SEA	Sea ( <i>used in connection with sea-surface temperature and state of the sea</i> )
SECN	Section
SEV	Severe ( <i>used e.g. to qualify icing and turbulence reports</i> )
SFC	Surface
SG	Snow grains
SH ...	Shower ( <i>followed by RA = rain, SN = snow, PL = ice pellets, GR = hail, GS = small hail and/or snow pellets or combinations thereof, e.g. SHRASN = showers of rain and snow</i> )
SIG	Significant
SIGMET <sup>†</sup>	Information concerning en-route weather and other phenomena in the atmosphere which may affect the safety of aircraft operations
SN	Snow
SNOCLO	Aerodrome closed due to snow ( <i>used in METAR/SPECI</i> )
SPECI <sup>†</sup>	Aerodrome special meteorological report (in meteorological code)
SPECIAL <sup>†</sup>	Local special meteorological report ( <i>in abbreviated plain language</i> )
SQ	Squall
SQL	Squall line
SS	Sandstorm
STNR	Stationary
SW	South-west
SWX	Space weather
SWXC	Space weather centre

## T

T	Temperature
TAF <sup>†</sup>	Aerodrome forecast ( <i>in meteorological code</i> )
TC	Tropical cyclone
TCAC	Tropical cyclone advisory centre
TCU	Towering cumulus
TDO	Tornado
TEMPO <sup>†</sup>	Temporary or temporarily
TL ...	Till ( <i>followed by time by which weather change is forecast to end</i> )
TN ...	Minimum temperature ( <i>followed by figures in TAF</i> )
TO	To ... ( <i>followed by place</i> )

TOP†	Cloud top
TREND†	Trend forecast
TS	Thunderstorm ( <i>in aerodrome reports and forecasts, TS used alone means thunder heard but no precipitation at the aerodrome</i> )
TS ...	Thunderstorm ( <i>followed by RA = RAIN, SN = snow, PL = ice pellets, GR = hail, GS = small hail and/or snow pellets or combinations thereof, e.g. TSRASN = thunderstorm with rain and snow</i> )
TURB	Turbulence
TX ...	Maximum temperature ( <i>followed by figures in TAF</i> )

## U

U	Upward ( <i>tendency in RVR during previous 10 minutes</i> )
UIR†	Upper flight information region
UTC†	Coordinated Universal Time

## V

...V...	Variations from the mean wind direction ( <i>preceded and followed by figures in METAR/SPECI, e.g. 350V070</i> )
VA	Volcanic ash
VAAC	Volcanic ash advisory centre
VC	Vicinity of the aerodrome ( <i>followed by FG = fog, FC = funnel cloud, SH = shower, PO = dust/sand whirls, BLDU = blowing dust, BLSA = blowing sand, BLSN = blowing snow, DS = duststorm, SS = sandstorm, TS = thunderstorm or VA = volcanic ash, e.g. VCFG = vicinity fog</i> )
VER	Vertical
VHF†	Very high frequency [30 MHz to 300 MHz]
VIS	Visibility
VOLMET†	Meteorological information for aircraft in flight
VRB	Variable
VV...	Vertical visibility ( <i>followed by figures in METAR/SPECI and TAF</i> )

## W

W	West or western longitude
W...	Sea-surface temperature ( <i>followed by figures in METAR/SPECI</i> )
WAFC	World area forecast centre
WAFS <sup>▲</sup>	World area forecast system
WI	Within
WID	Width or wide
WIND	Wind
WKN	Weaken or weakening
WRNG	Warning
WS	Wind shear
WSPD	Wind speed
WX	Weather

**Z**

Z                    Coordinated Universal Time (*in meteorological messages*)

- ^ Abbreviation not included in the PANS-ABC (Doc 8400).
  - † When radiotelephony is used, the abbreviations and terms are transmitted as spoken words.
  - ‡ When radiotelephony is used, the abbreviations and terms are transmitted using the individual letters in non-phonetic form.
  - \* Signal is also available for use in communicating with stations of the maritime mobile service.
-

## Appendix H

# DISPLAY OF METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION IN THE COCKPIT

*(See Chapter 5, 5.5)*

## 1. INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 Background

1.1.1 Flight crews are now able to receive timely updates of meteorological information on cockpit displays through the continuing evolution of data link communications technology. Textual meteorological products have been available through the aircraft communications and reporting service (ACARS) for many years. Graphical products are now also operationally available in the United States, and several initiatives are underway in Europe through EUROCONTROL that will result in graphical displays and cockpit applications of data link meteorological information. This cockpit access is becoming globally available through both government and private communications data link networks.

1.1.2 There are multiple options for the type of data link communications systems that may be used for transmitting meteorological information for cockpit display and user applications. There are broadcast systems that transmit a predetermined list of products on a recurring cycle (e.g. every five minutes). There are also request/reply systems that transmit specific products to a specific aircraft in response to a specific request. The broadcast and request/reply systems may also provide a contract service that only sends specific products (e.g. warnings) when they meet certain criteria. All the meteorological data link (METLINK) communications systems, however, include five basic processes or functions as described below and illustrated in Figure H-1. The first three steps are all ground processing functions. The fourth step is the data link communications transmit/receive function (ground and aircraft). The final function is the cockpit processing for flight crew display and other cockpit user applications. The five basic functions or steps are:

- a) collecting meteorological source information from various sources;
- b) processing and formatting the meteorological information into aeronautical meteorological products;
- c) processing (and segmenting or reformatting as necessary) aeronautical meteorological products for data link transmission;
- d) transmitting and receiving the digitally coded data into coverage volumes in the airspace; and
- e) decoding, filtering (if appropriate) and displaying the data by avionics on board the aircraft for flight crew review or other user cockpit applications.

### 1.2 Purpose and scope

1.2.1 The goal of providing METLINK information to flight crews is to enhance their awareness of the flight conditions and enable better strategic route planning consistent with guidance provided by ICAO and/or CAA regulations.

This cockpit access supports improved and safer flight operations by providing better information to pilots for making early decisions to continue or divert a flight during hazardous weather conditions and to support optimizing flight plan changes resulting in shorter routes and/or more efficient flight profiles.

1.2.2 A key to effective use of cockpit displays and applications of METLINK products is to establish standard methods and practices in processing and displaying METLINK products (Step 5 in Figure H-1). Establishing such standards will aid in assuring maximum possible consistency in displaying and applying METLINK products, and avoid presenting misleading information to flight crews. It will also support avionics certification and flight crew training and safety objectives.

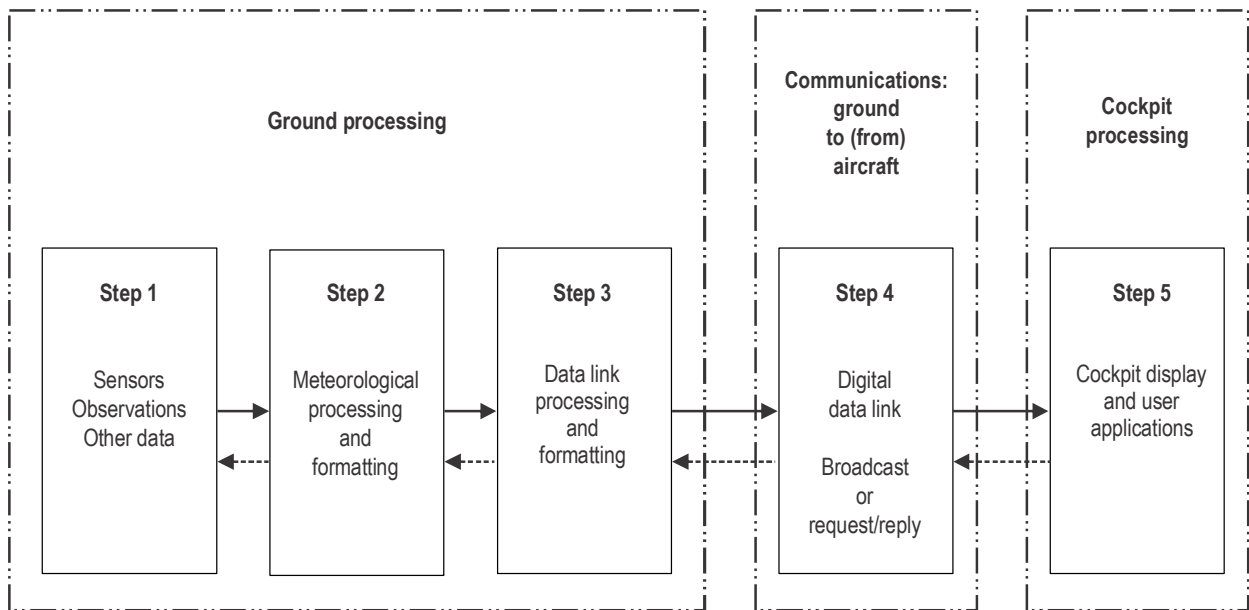
1.2.3 Establishing standards for displaying METLINK products also identifies requirements for the ground-based processing functions, especially Step 3 and potentially Step 2. It is assumed that those steps will be specified and performed in a manner appropriate for anticipated cockpit display and user applications of METLINK products.

**2. METEOROLOGICAL DATA**

2.1 There are multiple categories and types of meteorological data available for METLINK. This section briefly describes those products and types along with appropriate sources for METLINK products.

**2.2 Aeronautical meteorological data products and types — forecast, report and warning products**

Potential METLINK products include all aeronautical meteorological data products and types included in Annex 3 and as agreed by the meteorological authority.



**Figure H-1. METLINK system overview**

### 2.3 Future uplink products

Apart from the standard products specified in Annex 3, the following uplink products are useful for enhancing situational awareness in the cockpit, and could be provided subject to agreement with the operator concerned:

- a) wind profile derived from automatic downlink meteorological data;
- b) weather radar images;
- c) satellite images;
- d) lightning location display;
- e) short-term forecasts (nowcasts);
- f) terminal movement area weather products for “tailored approaches”; and
- g) three dimensional (3D) displays (e.g. radar and volcanic ash).

### 2.4 Meteorological data structures

METLINK products may include several types of meteorological data. The structure and coverage of the data will vary as suggested by the data types listed below.

- a) 1D — data for a single point in time;
- b) 2D — data over an area, data for cross-sections along/across flight routes or time series of data at a single location;
- c) 3D — grid data over multiple levels;
- d) 4D — evolution of a 3D grid over time; and
- e) object-oriented.

### 2.5 Sources

Appropriate sources for meteorological data and/or cockpit products include: aeronautical meteorological services, meteorological watch offices, world area forecast centres, volcanic ash advisory centres, tropical cyclone advisory centres, and operator and commercial databases or other sources as approved by the meteorological authority.

## 3. GUIDELINES FOR COCKPIT DISPLAY OF METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION

3.1 The guidance in this document is applicable to any processing and/or display of METLINK information in the cockpit. This guidance is not exhaustive relative to all METLINK products and the absence of guidance does not imply that further requirements may not emerge. For example, ongoing research and development will contribute to the basis for further METLINK product definitions (e.g. product animations or “looping” are current topics of prototyping and human factors investigations).

### 3.2 Airborne processing and display

3.2.1 In the cockpit environment, the information being conveyed by METLINK products should be designed as decision aids and quickly discernible by the flight crew. The METLINK products may also be included as components of the integrated processing that provides pilot route decision aids. It should be noted that the screen size available on cockpit displays is relatively small compared to ground pre-flight briefing workstations, and the METLINK product information may be integrated or overlaid on other cockpit display systems. Thus, it is highly probable that cockpit displays of METLINK products (Step 5 in Figure H-1) will not be exact replicas of routine aeronautical meteorological products used for ground pre-flight briefings (Step 2).

3.2.2 Any reformatting of aeronautical meteorological products for METLINK cockpit display or other user application should preserve, and not understate, the display of the most intense or severe meteorological conditions regardless of projection, scaling or any other types of processing. This requirement applies to both ground data link processing and formatting (Step 3) and cockpit processing for cockpit display and other user applications (Step 5). For example, the displayed geographical area over the earth's surface devoted to the depiction of the most severe level within a display (i.e. meteorological radar or satellite display) should not decrease following all system processing. In addition, the geo-location of meteorological area depictions should remain constant.

### 3.3 Essential display elements

For METLINK cockpit applications and displays, five elements are identified as essential information elements in Annex 3 for processing and displaying METLINK products. These five elements are listed below and discussed in succeeding paragraphs. They are considered essential to ensure easy recognition, correct understanding and appropriate application of METLINK information when viewed by the flight crew and/or used in other cockpit applications. These five key elements should be intuitive and easy to interpret in every METLINK product, and any information beyond these key elements should not interfere with the readability or comprehension of these elements:

- a) the information contained in the product;
- b) the currency or age of the product;
- c) the key or legend for displaying and/or decoding the product;
- d) the location and/or mapping of the product; and
- e) a positive, unambiguous indication of missing or corrupted data within the product.

### 3.4 Product content or title

Each METLINK product should include an indication of the type of information that is contained therein and, as appropriate, the originating source. For example, each page displaying METLINK information should clearly indicate to the flight crew the type of information displayed, distinguishing between meteorological observations, forecasts, and warnings and alerts (e.g. METAR, SPECI, TAF, SIGMET or wind shear alerts).

### 3.5 Product age

Each METLINK product should include a means to determine the age and valid time(s), as appropriate, on each page displayed or for each METLINK data set. Specific METLINK product time(s) should be expressed in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). Indications of the METLINK product age should be readily apparent to the flight crew such that they do not need to calculate the METLINK product age based on its date and time. Specifications for product age and valid time(s) for specific METLINK products are provided in the following paragraphs.



**Individual meteorological observations.** The date and time that the specific data is observed is the METLINK product date and time for individual meteorological observations. The observation date and time should be indicated on all displays of individual observation reports or sub-elements of those reports (e.g. METAR, SPECI, air-reports and individual meteorological radar reports).

**Meteorological forecast products.** The date and time the forecast product was issued and the valid time(s) for the specific forecast (e.g. the validity period of a TAF) are two separate but necessary METLINK product date(s) and time(s) for meteorological forecast products. Both the issue date and time, and the forecast validity period, should be indicated on all METLINK displays of individual forecast products.

**Composite or mosaic products.** These meteorological products are based on a summary or composite presentation of multiple individual observations (or forecasts) covering a defined time interval (i.e. 75 minutes for METAR/SPECI area maps and 10 minutes for weather radar mosaics). The date and time that the last individual report is incorporated into a composite or mosaic product (cut-off date and time) is the METLINK product date and time for such products.

Area METLINK map displays of mosaic precipitation based on multiple meteorological radar reports should only include single-site reports that are no more than 10 minutes prior to the cut-off date and time for that product. Any portion of a mosaic precipitation METLINK map display that exceeds the specified 10-minute requirement should be depicted as missing data.

**Sequential or looping product.** These meteorological products employ sequential replaying of historical METLINK products such as mosaic precipitation maps (e.g. weather radar mosaic maps). If a sequential METLINK data set is replayed, there should be an indication of, or a means to determine, the age of each METLINK data set in the sequence during replay.

**Integrated product.** Cockpit displays that integrate dissimilar METLINK products or data sets (e.g. METAR/SPECI, TAF, SIGMET, warnings and alerts) should include a means for the flight crew and/or other cockpit application to determine the age of each data set.

### 3.6 Product legend or key

Each METLINK product should include a legend or key that defines the meaning of any symbology or colour-coding used in the METLINK display. Each METLINK display should use consistent visual schemes, including colour, to represent different meteorological conditions. That legend or key should be easily accessible to the flight crew. The legend may optionally include other information that describes the METLINK product or data set characteristics such as the source of the product or specific production algorithm, or confidence levels for forecast products.

### 3.7 Product mapping or location

Each METLINK product should include geographic reference information essential for earth location and/or navigation information to facilitate flight crew use and cockpit display to include integration and/or overlay on other aircraft systems. Graphical displays should clearly indicate the geographic area covered (e.g. area defined by latitude/longitude, final approach, departure), and, when applicable, the vertical height(s) for the product (e.g. 3 000 ft, 3 000–5 000 ft, ABV 12 000 ft).

### 3.8 Product missing or corrupted data

The cockpit display of METLINK products should not in any way misrepresent any METLINK information that is known to be missing or corrupted. Such missing or corrupted METLINK data should be displayed in a unique format ensuring

positive and unambiguous indication and location of that data. Examples include indicating areas of missing data within the region displayed that are beyond the responsibility of the issuing authority for the METLINK product displayed, due to lost or incomplete data link transmissions when decoding or reassembling the METLINK cockpit display, or areas with no contribution of data such as areas beyond the limits of meteorological radar coverage.

### 3.9 Product discard or suppression

The METLINK system is designed to provide timely updates of meteorological information and should only provide current METLINK products. METLINK products should be discarded or suppressed when either a newer version is received or the METLINK product expiration time is exceeded. Whenever new and/or amended observations, forecasts or other aeronautical information are received into the METLINK network, they should be incorporated into the next transmission of that METLINK product. The following general guidelines apply for discarding or suppressing METLINK products listed below. It should be noted that the States may impose more restrictive guidelines.

*Note.— Trend or looping METLINK displays may include meteorological information that has expired or been superseded.*

**Observations (e.g. METAR/SPECI and air-report).** Discard 120 minutes after observation.

**Forecasts, warnings and alerts.** Discard when no longer valid or when a subsequent forecast, warning or alert product is not available (e.g. flight level wind forecasts are issued every six hours; the forecast issued at 1200 UTC should be discarded or suppressed after the time the 1800 UTC forecast was due).

**Composite/mosaic products.** Discard 75 minutes after product creation cut-off date/time.

### 3.10 Text formatting and display criteria

3.10.1 Textual coded meteorological reports (e.g. METAR and TAF) should be displayed or available for display in their original Annex 3 format as modified by the reporting States. If elements of such reports are extracted and displayed separately (e.g. surface visibility trend for the last three METAR reports), the integrity of the original coded text should be maintained.

3.10.2 When a METLINK product is comprised of both graphical and textual records (e.g. graphical and textual SIGMET messages), a means should be provided for the flight crew to associate both records and, at a minimum, access and display the textual component of the METLINK product.

### 3.11 Graphic formatting and display criteria

3.11.1 Graphical METLINK products provide an efficient and effective method for conveying meteorological information to flight crews. The graphical METLINK displays should use existing conventions for plotting or displaying METLINK information to the extent those conventions are compatible with cockpit multifunction display capabilities or the flight deck philosophy. It is understood that METLINK display conventions may need to be altered to maintain consistency with other cockpit display conventions and requirements, the design philosophy of the flight deck, the display context and the intended task.

3.11.2 The use of colour in METLINK displays is recommended but is not required. For METLINK products, a consistent colour philosophy should be used throughout the display (and across applications) which is appropriate in the context of the information being displayed. To the greatest extent practical, colours should be in harmony with other sources of similar information and maintain consistency with legacy weather graphics and systems, and flight deck design. A limited number of colours should be used in a METLINK cockpit display to minimize pilot interpretation workload.

3.11.3 METLINK displays that combine multiple meteorological phenomena such as icing, turbulence and convection on a single display should use a consistent approach for depicting the various meteorological phenomena. There should be a clear differentiation between the meteorological phenomena. Colour is one technique to differentiate between the meteorological phenomena; the use of symbology is another technique (e.g. 'X' to denote lightning strikes).

3.11.4 The following table provides guidelines for sample display colours, and in some cases, sample display characters or symbols for cockpit display of precipitation based on ground meteorological radar information.

*Note.— The radar intensity levels (dBZ) associated with Level 1–Level 6 provide close correlation between displays of METLINK precipitation products from ground meteorological radars (e.g. US NEXRAD) and installed airborne weather radar systems. There may be small variations (e.g. 1-2 dBZ) in the quantization levels of METLINK precipitation products from different airborne weather radar sources; such variations are acceptable.*

**Table H-1. Colour and symbol characterizations for METLINK precipitation product**

<i>Meteorological conditions related to the precipitation product</i>	<i>Colour</i>	<i>Character/symbol</i>
No weather	Display background (distinct from radar intensity colours)	None
Missing data	Distinctive colour or texture not used for background or other display elements	Distinctive character or texture not used for other display elements
Level 1: up to 30 dBZ	Green	"L" optional
Level 2: >30 — ≤40 dBZ	Amber or yellow	"M" optional
Level 3 (or greater): >40 dBZ (>40 — ≤45 dBZ if optional video integrator and processor levels used)	Red	"H" optional
(optional) Level 4: >45 — ≤50 dBZ	Red or another distinguishable colour	
(optional) Level 5: >50 — 54 dBZ	Magenta	
(optional) Level 6: ≥55 dBZ	Magenta, texture may be added to aid in visual discrimination	



## Appendix I

### GUIDELINES FOR ACCESS TO AERONAUTICAL METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION

(See Chapter 6, 6.1.4)

*Note 1.— The “Guidelines for Access to Aeronautical Meteorological Information” were noted by the Council on 23 February 2004 (171/4).*

*Note 2.— The “Guidelines for Authorized Access to the World Area Forecast System (WAFS) Satellite Broadcast” noted by the Council on 5 July 1995 (145/24) provide additional guidance relevant to the subject matter (see Appendix A, section 2).*

#### 1. GENERAL

1.1 Aeronautical meteorological information consists of operational meteorological (OPMET) information, including the WAFS upper wind, humidity and temperature and significant weather forecasts and alphanumeric messages. The alphanumeric messages consist of tropical cyclone advisories, volcanic ash advisories, aerodrome routine meteorological reports (METAR), aerodrome special meteorological reports (SPECI), special air-reports (AIREP), aerodrome forecasts (TAF), GAMET area forecasts, route forecasts (ROFOR)<sup>1</sup> and SIGMET and AIRMET information.

1.2 The telecommunication facilities used for the international exchange of OPMET information should be aeronautical fixed service (AFS), in accordance with Annex 3 — *Meteorological Service for International Air Navigation* and the regional air navigation plan (ANP), Part III — *Communications, Navigation and Surveillance* and Part V — *Meteorology*.

1.3 Through the use of the AFS to exchange OPMET information in accordance with the regional ANP, Part V — *Meteorology*, Contracting States will meet their obligation under Article 28 of the *Convention on International Civil Aviation* (Doc 7300) regarding the supply to users of aeronautical meteorological information for the provision of meteorological service to international air navigation.

1.4 Recovery by Contracting States of associated costs through charges on international civil aviation should be based on the principles contained in Article 15 of Doc 7300 and ICAO's *Policies on Charges for Airports and Air Navigation Services* (Doc 9082).

*Note.— Detailed guidance for determining the costs of aeronautical meteorological service is provided in the Manual on Air Navigation Services Economics (Doc 9161).*

---

<sup>1</sup> Requirements for ROFOR have since been eliminated from Annex 3.

## **2. ACCESS TO AERONAUTICAL METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION**

2.1 It is the prerogative of each Contracting State to determine the distribution of the OPMET information to users, in the State concerned, as well as means to be used for this purpose.

2.2 It is for each Contracting State to determine the users in the State concerned to be provided with the access to aeronautical meteorological information. Meteorological information for international air navigation is to be provided by, or through arrangements made by, the meteorological authority as specified in 2.1.4 of Annex 3 to ensure that the following users have the necessary access to aeronautical meteorological information in order to discharge their responsibilities to international air navigation or to perform their respective functions: world area forecast centres, aerodrome and other meteorological offices; operators; air traffic services units; search and rescue services units; aeronautical information services units; volcanic ash and tropical cyclone advisory centres; and other aeronautical users.

---

## Appendix J

### TEMPLATE FOR ROUTINE AIR-REPORTS BY AIR-GROUND LINK

(See Chapter 7, 7.5.3)

Key:        M = mandatory, part of every message  
              C = inclusion conditional; included whenever available

<i>Element</i>	<i>Detailed content</i>	<i>Template(s)</i>	<i>Examples</i>
Message type designator (M)	Type of the air-report (M)	AR	AR
Aircraft identification (M)	Aircraft radiotelephony call sign (M)	nnnnnn	VA812
Aircraft registration (M)	Aircraft registration (M)	nn[nnnnn]	4XBCD N2567GA
DATA BLOCK 1			
Latitude (M)	Latitude in degrees and minutes (M)	Nnnnn or Snnnn	S4506
Longitude (M)	Longitude in degrees and minutes (M)	Wnnnnn or Ennnnn	E01056
Level (M)	Flight level (M)	FLnnn	FL330
Time (M)	Time of occurrence in hours and minutes (M)	OBS AT nnnnZ	OBS AT 1216Z
DATA BLOCK 2			
Wind direction (M)	Wind direction in degrees true (M)	nnn/	262/
Wind speed (M)	Wind speed in metres per second ( <i>or</i> knots) (M)	nnnMPS ( <i>or</i> nnnKT)	040MPS (080KT)
Wind quality flag (M)	Wind quality flag (M)	n	1
Air temperature (M)	Air temperature in tenths of degrees C (M)	T[M]nnn	T127 TM455
Turbulence (C)	Turbulence in hundredths of $m^{2/3}s^{-1}$ and the time of occurrence of the peak value (C) <sup>1</sup>	EDRnnn/nn	EDR064/08
Humidity (C)	Relative humidity in per cent (C)	RHnnn	RH054

---

1. The time of occurrence to be reported in accordance with Annex 3, Appendix 4, Table A4-2.





## Appendix K

### GUIDANCE RELATED TO THE ISSUANCE OF SIGMET INFORMATION FOR TROPICAL CYCLONES

(See Chapter 4, 4.2.4.1)

#### 1. GENERAL

1.1 The detailed content and order of elements in SIGMET information for tropical cyclones (TCs) are set out in the “Template for SIGMET and AIRMET messages”, in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A. During the last few years, through successive amendments to this template, the complexity of SIGMET information for TCs has increased markedly. Initially SIGMET information for TCs consisted of the:

- a) phenomenon (i.e. TC), together with its name;
- b) observed position of the TC centre;
- c) extent of associated cumulonimbus (CB) clouds around the TC centre;
- d) movement of the TC centre;
- e) change in intensity of the TC centre; and
- f) forecast position of the TC centre.

Information included in SIGMET for TC was concise and its elements readily available from advisory information for TC, issued by a specialized TC centre, i.e. one of the ICAO tropical cyclone advisory centres (TCACs).

1.2 The increased complexity and length can be attributed to two recent amendments to Annex 3:

- a) inclusion of multiple areas of CB clouds present in the flight information region (FIR), without a clear indication whether they should be associated with the TC or not; furthermore, they may relate to varying observation or forecast times; and
- b) possibility to repeat the forecast position of the TC centre for multiple validity times within the validity period of a SIGMET.

While a SIGMET for TC containing multiple areas of CB clouds and a series of forecast positions of the TC centre is, *stricto sensu*, compatible with the “Template for SIGMET and AIRMET messages”, such SIGMET is in contradiction with Annex 3, 7.1.1 which stipulates that SIGMET information shall “...give a concise description in abbreviated plain language concerning the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en-route weather...”. The interpretation of a lengthy SIGMET by a human is tedious, and their utility for end users questionable. In this regard, software engineers have encountered difficulties concerning the interpretation of the template and uncertainty as to how to include more than one area of CB clouds therein. Under these circumstances, it was considered important to develop guidance for the best practice which would decrease the complexity, and limit the length, of SIGMET information for TC.

1.3 The development of this guidance was based on Annex 3, 7.1.4 which stipulates that SIGMET information for tropical cyclones should be based on advisory information provided by tropical cyclone advisory centres, designated by regional air navigation agreement. The advisory information for TC is concise, well-structured and easily understandable to users. The user organizations have expressed their preference for the advisory information for TC which contains all essential elements required. Based on the foregoing, it was considered appropriate that SIGMET for TC should include, as a rule, those elements that are readily available from the corresponding advisory information, and that the inclusion of any additional elements should be minimized and considered only if the office issuing SIGMET (i.e. meteorological watch office) has access to reliable information from other data sources, e.g. digital radar or satellite data or output from high-resolution numerical weather prediction models. The systematic use of advisory information for TC in the preparation of SIGMET for TC has the additional advantage that it will ensure compliance with one of the fundamental principles of quality management, i.e. avoidance of supplying potentially conflicting information.

1.4 The template for SIGMET and AIRMET does allow the issuance of SIGMET for TC, which are far more complex than those presented in this appendix. However, the issuance of such SIGMET is not considered desirable based on the foregoing.

## 2. GUIDANCE

2.1 Guidance is presented in terms of two tables applicable for SIGMET for TC extracted from the template shown in Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A. The first table and the related examples (Table K-1, and Examples K-1 and K-2) cater for an observed phenomenon, i.e. the TC is identified as an observed phenomenon and thus present in the FIR concerned at the time of the issuance of SIGMET, while the second table and the related examples (Table K-2, and Examples K-3 and K-4) concern a forecast phenomenon, i.e. the TC is identified as a forecast phenomenon and outside the FIR concerned at the time of issuance of SIGMET and is expected to reach the FIR by the commencement of the validity period.

2.1 The tables are self-explanatory. Any issues requiring attention have been included in the Remarks column. The interpretation of elements that have been subject to uncertainty in the template for SIGMET for TC is briefly addressed below, together with proposed solutions:

- a) **CB clouds.** CB clouds are *not* the phenomenon that causes the issuance of a SIGMET for TC; it is an *associated* phenomenon that is expected to describe the extent of the area affected by the TC and related hazardous conditions, e.g. deep convection and gale-force winds. There may be other clusters of CB clouds in the FIR concerned; if they are not associated with the TC, a separate SIGMET for thunderstorms, or a separate AIRMET for thunderstorms or CB clouds, should be issued. Bearing these principles in mind, it is considered that in a majority of cases, only one area of CB, readily available from the corresponding advisory information for TC, can be considered genuinely associated with the TC centre, and that the inclusion of a second area of CB clouds will suffice to cover the rest of the cases;
- b) **Movement or expected movement.** The position of this element after the CB clouds has caused a lot of confusion. It has been erroneously thought to relate to the movement of CB clouds. Based on the corresponding advisory information for TC, it is clear that the movement must relate to that of the TC centre at the time of issuance of the SIGMET for TC. Moreover, this element can only be included once in a SIGMET;
- c) **Changes in intensity.** Similar to movement, as noted in b) above, this element has been misinterpreted to be related to the changes in intensity of CB clouds. However, based on the corresponding advisory information for TC, the changes in intensity have to correspond to those of maximum surface winds occurring around the TC at the time of issuance of the SIGMET for TC;

- d) **TC forecast position.** Advisory information for TC contains four forecast times of TC centre positions: 6, 12, 18 and 24 hours after its time of issue. Considering that the validity period of SIGMET information for TC cannot exceed 6 hours, such SIGMET should ideally include: 1) only one TC forecast position if the TC is situated in the FIR at the time of the issuance of SIGMET (i.e. TC is an observed phenomenon); or 2) two forecast positions if the TC is situated outside the borders of the FIR at the time of the issuance of SIGMET (i.e. TC is a forecast phenomenon). No other forecast positions can be obtained from the advisory information for TC.

**Table K-1. Structure of SIGMET for TC: applicable for TC which is situated in the FIR concerned at the time of the issuance of SIGMET**

Key: M = inclusion mandatory, part of every message;  
C = inclusion conditional, included whenever applicable.

*Note — Since SIGMET information for tropical cyclones should be based on the advisory information provided by the tropical cyclone advisory centres (Annex 3, 7.1.4), all the conditional (C) elements that are not available from the advisory information are considered optional, as indicated in the Remarks column below. Optional elements are in square brackets and highlighted in the Example column below.*

<i>Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)</i>	<i>The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted</i>	<i>Template applicable to SIGMET for TC</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Name of the FIR/CTA (M)	Not applicable	nnnn nnnnnnnnnn FIR <i>or</i> UIR <i>or</i> FIR/UIR <i>or</i> nnnn nnnnnnnnnn CTA	YUCC AMSWELL FIR	Similar to any SIGMET
Phenomenon (M)	Name of tropical cyclone (Line 5)  Observed position of the centre (Line 7)	TC nnnnnnnnnn PSN Nnn[nn] <i>or</i> Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] <i>or</i> Ennn[nn] CB  <i>or</i> TC NN PSN Nnn[nn] <i>or</i> Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] <i>or</i> Ennn[nn] CB	TC GLORIA PSN N10 W060 CB	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET as a mandatory element
Observed or forecast	Observed position of the	OBS AT nnnnZ	OBS AT 1210Z	Available from the TC advisory; to be

<i>Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)</i>	<i>The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted</i>	<i>Template applicable to SIGMET for TC</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
phenomenon (M)	centre (Line 7)			included in SIGMET as a mandatory element  Time refers to the observed position of the TC centre
Location (C)	Observed CB cloud (Line 8)	WI Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — [Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]]  or  WI nnnKM (or nnnNM) OF TC CENTRE	WI 200KM OF TC CENTRE	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET
Level (C)	Observed CB cloud (Line 8)	TOP [ABV or BLW] FLnnn	TOP FL500	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET
Repetition of elements <sup>1</sup>	Not available	[AND]	<b>[AND]</b>	<b>Optional elements</b> , to be included only if these additional CB clouds are associated with the TC and cover an area in the FIR additional to that indicated in the TC advisory. This information should be based on reliable
Observed or forecast phenomenon (C)	Not available	OBS AT nnnnZ	<b>OBS AT 1220Z</b>	
Location (C)	Not available	WI Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] —	<b>WI N1230 W06030 — N1255 W06000 — N1250 W06055 — N1230 W06030</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Not currently included in the template for SIGMET in Annex 3; to be included in Amendment 80 to Annex 3.

Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)	The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted	Template applicable to SIGMET for TC	Example	Remarks
		Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — [Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]]  or  WI nnnKM (or nnnNM) OF TC CENTRE		data sources (e.g. satellite images, radar data, high-resolution numerical weather prediction models etc.). For ease of interpretation and use, the time of observation should be close to that included in the corresponding advisory information
Level (C)	Not available	TOP [ABV or BLW] FLnnn	TOP ABV FL500	
Movement or expected movement (C)	Direction and speed of movement (Line 9)	MOV N [nnKMH] or MOV NNE [nnKMH] or MOV NE [nnKMH] or MOV ENE [nnKMH] or MOV E [nnKMH] or MOV ESE [nnKMH] or MOV SE [nnKMH] or MOV SSE [nnKMH] or MOV S [nnKMH] or MOV SSW [nnKMH] or MOV SW [nnKMH] or MOV WSW [nnKMH] or MOV W [nnKMH] or MOV WNW [nnKMH] or MOV NW [nnKMH] or MOV NNW [nnKMH]  (or MOV N [nnKT] or MOV NNE [nnKT] or MOV NE [nnKT] or MOV ENE [nnKT] or MOV E [nnKT] or MOV ESE [nnKT] or MOV SE [nnKT] or	MOV WNW	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET  The speed of movement of the centre of the tropical cyclone at the time of observation; never to be used to describe the movement of CB clouds

<i>Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)</i>	<i>The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted</i>	<i>Template applicable to SIGMET for TC</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
		MOV SSE [nnKT] or MOV S [nnKT] or MOV SSW [nnKT] or MOV SW [nnKT] or MOV WSW [nnKT] or MOV W [nnKT] or MOV WNW [nnKT] or MOV NW [nnKT] or MOV NNW [nnKT])  or  STNR		
Changes in intensity (C)	Changes in intensity (Line 10)	INTSF  or  WKN  or  NC	INTSF	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET  The change of intensity in terms of maximum wind speed at the time of observation
Forecast time (C)	Forecast of centre position (+ 6 HR) (Line 13)	FCST AT nnnnZ	FCST AT 1800Z	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET  The 6-hour forecast is the only forecast time that coincides with the validity period of SIGMET for TC, which cannot exceed 6 hours
TC forecast position (C)	Forecast of centre position (Line 13)	TC CENTRE PSN Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]  or	TC CENTRE PSN N1015 W06040 [CB]	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET  Only one TC forecast position

<i>Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)</i>	<i>The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted</i>	<i>Template applicable to SIGMET for TC</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
		TC CENTRE PSN Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] CB		may be included since the subsequent forecast positions included in the TC advisory relate to validity times that are beyond the validity period of SIGMET <b>Optional element:</b> CB
Forecast position(C)	Not available	WI Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]  or  WI nnnKM (nnnNM) OF TC CENTRE	WI 220KM OF TC CENTRE	<b>Optional element,</b> to be included only if reliable data sources are available (e.g. satellite images, radar data, high-resolution numerical weather prediction models etc.)
Repetition of elements (C)	Not available	[AND]	AND	<b>Optional elements,</b> to be included only if these additional CB
Forecast position (C)	Not available	WI Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]  or  WI nnnKM (nnnNM) OF TC CENTRE	WI N12 W070 — N13 W075 — N13 W065 — N12 W070	clouds are associated with the TC and are forecast to cover another area in the FIR; and if reliable data sources are available (e.g. satellite images, radar data, high-resolution numerical weather prediction models etc.)

**Example K-1. SIGMET information for TC, present in the FIR at the time of issuance, based exclusively on advisory information for TC**

*Note.— Use of multiple lines is not a requirement; used in this example for clarity.*

YUCC SIGMET 3 VALID 251230/251830 YUDO-  
 YUCC AMSWELL FIR TC GLORIA PSN N10 W060 CB OBS AT 1210Z WI 200KM OF TC CENTRE TOP FL500  
 MOV WNW INTSF  
 FCST AT 1800Z TC CENTRE PSN N1015 W06040

**Example K-2. SIGMET information for TC, present in the FIR at the time of issuance, based on advisory information for TC and MET information from reliable data sources**

*Note.— Use of multiple lines is not a requirement; used in this example for clarity.*

YUCC SIGMET 3 VALID 251230/251830 YUDO-  
 YUCC AMSWELL FIR TC GLORIA PSN N10 W060 CB OBS AT 1210Z WI 200KM OF TC CENTRE TOP FL500 AND  
 OBS AT 1220Z WI N1230 W06030 — N1255 W06000 — N1250 W06055 — N1230 W06030 TOP ABV FL500  
 MOV WNW INTSF  
 FCST AT 1800Z TC CENTRE PSN N1015 W06040 CB WI 220KM OF TC CENTRE AND WI N12 W070 — N13 W075 —  
 N13 W065 — N12 W070

**Table K-2. Structure of SIGMET for TC: applicable for TC which is situated outside the FIR concerned at the time of the issuance of SIGMET**

Key: M = inclusion mandatory, part of every message;  
 C = inclusion conditional, included whenever applicable.

*Note 1.— Since SIGMET information for tropical cyclones should be based on the advisory information provided by the tropical cyclone advisory centres (Annex 3, 7.1.4), all the conditional (C) elements that are not available from the advisory information are considered optional, as indicated in the Remarks column below; and*

*Note 2.— Optional elements are in square brackets and highlighted in the Example column below.*

<i>Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)</i>	<i>The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted</i>	<i>Template applicable to SIGMET for TC</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
Name of the FIR/CTA (M)	Not applicable	nnnn nnnnnnnnnn FIR  or	YUCC AMSWELL FIR	Similar to any SIGMET



<i>Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)</i>	<i>The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted</i>	<i>Template applicable to SIGMET for TC</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Remarks</i>
		UIR or FIR/UIR  or  nnnn nnnnnnnnnn CTA		
Phenomenon (M)	Name of tropical cyclone (Line 5) Forecast of centre position (Line 13 or 15)	TC nnnnnnnnnn PSN Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] CB  or  TC NN PSN Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] CB	TC GLORIA PSN N10 W060 [CB] <sup>2</sup>	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET as a mandatory element (except for CB <sup>2</sup> )  In view of the validity period of SIGMET for TC (6 hours) and the fact that such SIGMET may be issued up to 12 hours before the beginning of their validity period, either 6- or 12-hour forecast information from TC advisories is to be used
Observed or forecast phenomenon (M)	Forecast centre position (Line 13 or 15)	FCST AT nnnnZ	FCST AT 1600Z	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET as a mandatory element  Time refers to the forecast position of the TC centre
Location (C)	Not available	WI Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn]	[WI 150NM OF TC CENTRE]	<b>Optional elements</b> , to be included only if CB clouds are

<sup>2</sup> Omission not in line with the current template for SIGMET in Annex 3; possibility to omit "CB" to be included in Amendment 80.

Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)	The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted	Template applicable to SIGMET for TC	Example	Remarks
		Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — [Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]]  or  WI nnnKM (or nnnNM) OF TC CENTRE		associated with the TC. This information should be based on reliable data sources (e.g. satellite images, radar data, high-resolution numerical weather prediction models etc.)
Level (C)	Not available	TOP [ABV or BLW] FLnnn	TOP BLW FL450]	
Repetition of elements <sup>1</sup>	Not available	[AND]	[AND	<b>Optional elements</b> , to be included only if CB clouds are
Location (C)	Not available	WI Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — [Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]]  or  WI nnnKM (or nnnNM) OF TC CENTRE	WI N1230 W06030 — N1255 W06000 — N1250 W06055 — N1230 W06030	associated with the TC and are expected to cover an area in the FIR additional to that indicated above. This information should be based on reliable data sources (e.g. satellite images, radar data, high-resolution numerical weather prediction models etc.)
Level (C)	Not available	TOP [ABV or BLW] FLnnn	TOP FL500]	
Movement or expected Movement (C)	Direction and speed of movement (Line 9)	MOV N [nnKMH] or MOV NNE [nnKMH] or MOV NE [nnKMH] or MOV ENE [nnKMH] or MOV E [nnKMH] or MOV ESE [nnKMH] or	MOV NW 10KT	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET  The speed of movement of the

Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)	The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted	Template applicable to SIGMET for TC	Example	Remarks
		MOV SE [nnKMH] or MOV SSE [nnKMH] or MOV S [nnKMH] or MOV SSW [nnKMH] or MOV SW [nnKMH] or MOV WSW [nnKMH] or MOV W [nnKMH] or MOV WNW [nnKMH] or MOV NW [nnKMH] or MOV NNW [nnKMH]  (or MOV N [nnKT] or MOV NNE [nnKT] or MOV NE [nnKT] or MOV ENE [nnKT] or MOV E [nnKT] or MOV ESE [nnKT] or MOV SE [nnKT] or MOV SSE [nnKT] or MOV S [nnKT] or MOV SSW [nnKT] or MOV SW [nnKT] or MOV WSW [nnKT] or MOV W [nnKT] or MOV WNW [nnKT] or MOV NW [nnKT] or MOV NNW [nnKT])  or  STNR		centre of the tropical cyclone at the time of observation; never to be used to describe the movement of CB clouds  (In the case of SIGMET for <i>forecast</i> TC, this element relates to a point of time before the validity period of SIGMET)
Changes in intensity (C)	Changes in intensity (Line 10)	INTSF  or  WKN  or	WKN	Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET  The change of intensity in terms of maximum wind speed at the time of

<p><i>Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)</i></p>	<p><i>The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted</i></p>	<p><i>Template applicable to SIGMET for TC</i></p>	<p><i>Example</i></p>	<p><i>Remarks</i></p>
		<p>NC</p>		<p>observation  (In the case of SIGMET for <i>forecast</i> TC, the element relates to a point of time before the validity period of SIGMET)</p>
<p>Forecast time (C)</p>	<p>Forecast of centre position (Line 15 or 17)</p>	<p>FCST AT nnnnZ</p>	<p>FCST AT 2200Z</p>	<p>Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET  Either the 12-hour or 18-hour forecast is the only forecast time that coincides with the validity period of SIGMET for TC, which cannot exceed 6 hours</p>
<p>TC forecast position (C)</p>	<p>Forecast of centre position (Line 15 or 17)</p>	<p>TC CENTRE PSN Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]  or  TC CENTRE PSN Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] CB</p>	<p>TC CENTRE PSN N1015 E06030 [CB]</p>	<p>Available from the TC advisory; to be included in SIGMET  Only one TC forecast position may be included since the subsequent forecast positions included in the TC advisory relate to times that are beyond the validity period of SIGMET  <b>Optional element:</b> CB</p>

Element in the template for SIGMET for tropical cyclone (Annex 3, Appendix 6, Table A6-1A)	The element(s) in the corresponding TC advisory from where the information is to be extracted	Template applicable to SIGMET for TC	Example	Remarks
Forecast position	Not available	WI Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]	WI 120NM OF TC CENTRE	<b>Optional element</b> , to be included only if CB clouds are associated with the TC and reliable data sources are available (e.g. satellite images, radar data, high-resolution numerical weather prediction models etc.)
Repetition of elements		[AND]	AND	<b>Optional elements</b> , to be included only if CB clouds are associated with the TC and are expected to cover an area in the FIR additional to that indicated above. This information should be based on reliable data sources (e.g. satellite images, radar data, high-resolution numerical weather prediction models etc.)
Forecast position (C)	Not available	WI Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn] — Nnn[nn] or Snn[nn] Wnnn[nn] or Ennn[nn]	WI N12 W070 — N13 W075 — N13 W065 — N12 W070]	This information should be based on reliable data sources (e.g. satellite images, radar data, high-resolution numerical weather prediction models etc.)

**Example K-3. SIGMET information for TC, outside the FIR at the time of issuance, based exclusively on advisory information for TC**

*Note.— Use of multiple lines is not a requirement; used in this example for clarity.*

YUCC SIGMET 3 VALID 251600/252200 YUDO-  
 YUCC AMSWELL FIR TC GLORIA PSN N10 W060 FCST AT 1600Z  
 MOV NW 10KT WKN  
 FCST AT 2200Z TC CENTRE PSN N1015 W06030

**Example K-4. SIGMET information for TC, outside the FIR at the time of issuance, based on advisory information for TC and MET information from reliable data sources**

*Note.— Use of multiple lines is not a requirement; used in this example for clarity.*

YUCC SIGMET 3 VALID 251600/252200 YUDO-  
YUCC AMSWELL FIR TC GLORIA PSN N10 W060 CB FCST AT 1600Z WI 150NM OF TC CENTRE TOP BLW FL450  
AND WI N1230 W06030 — N1255 W06000 — N1250 W06030 — N1230 W06030 TOP FL500  
MOV NW 10KT WKN  
FCST AT 2200Z TC CENTRE PSN N1015 W06030 CB WI 120NM OF TC CENTRE AND WI N12 W070 — N13 W075 —  
N13 W065 — N12 W070

— END —



ISBN 978-92-9265-389-7



9

789292

653897